Firmware Development and Integration for ALICE TPC and PHOS Front-end Electronics

A Trigger Based Readout and Control System operating in a Radiation Environment

Johan Alme



Dissertation for the degree philosophiae doctor (PhD) at the University of Bergen

10 August 2008

Acknowledgements

Since I started on the PhD program in May 2004 there have been many big events in my life, both privately and professionally. I am now a married man, father to a beautiful daughter (soon there are two!) and owns a house and a station wagon. Brann has won the Norwegian championship for the first time in 44 years, Liverpool FC won the Champions League and Kiss and Black Sabbath - two of my all time favourite bands since I was a teenager - have played live in Bergen. Professionally I have finally come to the point where I can hand in my PhD-thesis. It has been four years where I have learnt a lot and got to know a whole lot of nice people from all parts of the world. I have travelled more than ever before and even got to visit some exotic places like for instance Wuhan, Chicago, Sardinia and of course CERN. It has been a great time!

First of all I would like to thank my supervisors Kjetil Ullaland and Dieter Röhrich for giving me this opportunity and for having belief in me. If you hadn't talked me into it, I wouldn't have tried to apply for a stipend for the fourth time in a row. Kjetil has guided and helped me in everything from the art of electronics to makeover of old houses. We have had long and valuable discussions where I might have disagreed with him in the start but normally not in the end. Dieter has stood up for me during heated debates and e-mail exchanges and has always been helpful whenever help was needed. In addition he has an amazing way of explaning the unexplainable in simple words. The two of you have really contributed into making the 4 years that I have put into this thesis an enjoyable and educational journey. The same goes to Bernhard Skaali at the University of Oslo who've formally been my boss during these years. Without you I would never have got this opportunity. I would also like to thank the Norwegian Research Council for financial support.

A very special thank also goes to my friend and colleague Ketil Røed with whom I shared an enormous amount of coffees and crackers as well as having generally interesting discussions about nothing and everything. We have worked closely together and I have found it to be very rewarding. Thanks also to Torsten Alt, Matthias Richter, Per Thomas Hille and Gerd Tröger for always being willing to answer my at times stupid questions and for making life at CERN enjoyable during my stays there (by for instance nighttime swimming activities with Per Thomas and Torsten). All the rest of the people in the Microelectronics group and the Nuclear Physics group at the University of Bergen, as well as the people involved from the Bergen University College, also deserve to be thanked. Some times for giving

valuable professional input, and all the time for being part of a great social environment that have made me look forward to go to the office every day (ok, I have to be honest – maybe not on Sundays).

My good friend Vegard Øvrelid deserves my highest appreciation for reading through my thesis and helping me getting my English grammar in a presentable shape.

Special thanks must go to my parents for always believing in me and supporting me, and for being loving grandparents to Liv. Liv deserves the biggest hug of all for filling my life with joy and laughter, even if she is an earlybird...

Finally, the deepest gratitude goes to my wife, Elen Siglen, for always supporting me, for her patience, and for keeping up with my long and endless stories of people she have never met and topics that don't interest her. You are an even better wife and better mother to our daughter that I ever could have dreamt of having. I love you.

Johan

Bergen, August 2008

Abstract

The readout electronics in PHOS and TPC – two of the major detectors of the ALICE experiment at the LHC – consist of a set of Front End Cards (FECs) that digitize, process and buffer the data from the detector sensors. The FECs are connected to a Readout Control Unit (RCU) via two sets of custom made PCB backplanes. For PHOS, 28 FECs are connected to one RCU, while for TPC the number is varying from 18 to 25 FECs depending on location. The RCU is in charge of the data readout, including reception and distribution of triggers and in moving the data from the FECs to the Data Acquisition System. In addition it does low level control tasks. The RCU consists of an RCU Motherboard that hosts a Detector Control System (DCS) board and a Source Interface Unit. The DCS board is an embedded computer running Linux that controls the readout electronics.

All the mentioned devices are implemented in commercial grade SRAM based Field Programmable Gate Arrays (FPGAs). Even if these devices are not very radiation tolerant, they are chosen because of their cost and flexibility, and most importantly the possibility to easily do future upgrades of the electronics. Since physical shielding of the electronics is not possible in ALICE due to the architecture of the detector, the radiation related errors need to be handled with other techniques such as firmware mitigation techniques.

The main objective of this thesis has been to make firmware modules for the FPGAs reciding in different parts of the readout electronics. Because of the flexibility of the designs, some of them have, with minor adaptations, been applied in different devices surrounding the readout electronics. Additionally, effort has been put into testing and integration of the system. In detail, the work presented in this thesis can be summarized as follows:

- *Firmware design for radiation environments*. All firmware modules that are designed are to be used in a radiation environment, and then special precautions need to be taken. Additionally, a state-of-the-art solution has been designed for protecting the main FPGA on the RCU Motherboard against radiation induced functional failures.
- Implementation of Trigger Handling for the TPC/PHOS Readout Electronics. The triggers are received from the global trigger system via an optical link and are handled by an Application Spesific Integrated Circuit (ASIC) on the DCS board. The problem is that the DCS board might have occasional down time

due to radiation related errors, so a special interface module is designed for the main FPGA on the RCU Motherboard. This module decodes and verifies the information received from the trigger system. As it is a generic design it has also been implemented as part of the BusyBox. The BusyBox is an important device in the trigger path of the TPC and PHOS sub-detectors.

- Implementation of the TPC/PHOS Front-end Electronics Detector Control System. This point includes several parts that are listed from bottom up:
 - PHOS FEC Board Controller. The PHOS FEC Board Controller is the lowest level of the DCS. It is an SRAM based FPGA that is in charge of monitoring the health status of the given FEC and configure vital parts of the PHOS Front-end. The design is based on the TPC Board Controller design, but it is functionally extended and has increased robustness against radiation related errors and other external errors.
 - Active Partial Reconfiguration Solution: A vital part of the Fee DCS is the Active Partial Reconfiguration Solution that deals with radiation related errors. This state-of-the-art design enables the possibility to clear any radiation related error in the configuration memory of the main FPGA on the RCU motherboard while not interfering with the operation of the design.
 - *RCU main FPGA DCS interface*. A small module translating the DCS bus protocol to an FPGA internal RCU bus protocol.
 - *TPC/PHOS DCS board firmware*. The DCS board firmware implements the communication path down to the registers on the RCU, and upwards towards the ARM CPU. As the DCS board might, from time to time, reboot because of radiation related errors, effort has been put into ensuring that this does not affect the data flow on the RCU Motherboard. Because of the flexibility of the DCS board, this firmware has been adapted to several other motherboards in the system.
- *Testing and Verification of all firmware modules*. All firmware modules have been extensively verified with computer simulation before being tested in real hardware.
- Maintenance of the DCS board for TPC/PHOS and of the different Fee firmware modules in general.

• *System Integration and System Level Tests.* A big contribution has been done integrating and testing all the modules and sub-systems. This concern both locally on the RCU and the BusyBox, as well as making all the devices play together on a larger scale.

As the presented electronics are located in a radiation environment and are physically unavailable after commissioning, effort has been put into making designs that are reliable, scalable and possible to upgrade. This has been ensured by following a systematic design approach where testability, version management and documentation are key elements. Some parts of the work described in this thesis have been published and presented in international peer reviewed publications and conferences.

Contents

| ACKNOWL | EDGEMENTS | 3 |
|-----------|--|----|
| ABSTRACT | | 5 |
| CONTENTS | | 9 |
| CHAPTER 1 | THE ALICE EXPERIMENT | 15 |
| 1.1 Inte | RODUCTION | 15 |
| 1.2 LAR | GE HADRON COLLIDER | 17 |
| 1.3 ALI | CE PHYSICS | |
| 1.4 ALI | CE DETECTOR | 19 |
| 1.4.1 | Overview | |
| 1.4.2 | Time Projection Chamber (TPC) | 20 |
| 1.4.3 | PHOton Spectrometer (PHOS) | 21 |
| 1.4.4 | Other Detectors | 22 |
| 1.5 RAD | DIATION ENVIRONMENT OF THE FEE | |
| 1.6 Oni | INE SYSTEMS FOR THE ALICE TPC/PHOS ELECTRONICS | 23 |
| 1.6.1 | Experiment Control System | 23 |
| 1.6.2 | Trigger, Timing and Control System | 24 |
| 1.6.3 | Data Acquisition System | 26 |
| 1.6.4 | High Level Trigger | 28 |
| 1.6.5 | Detector Control System | |
| CHAPTER 2 | 2 TPC AND PHOS FRONT-END ELECTRONICS | |
| 2.1 INTE | RODUCTION | |
| 2.2 TPC | C FEE TOPOLOGY | |
| 2.3 PHO | OS FEE TOPOLOGY | |
| 2.4 Fro | NT END ELECTRONICS DEVICES | |
| 2.4.1 | TPC Front End Card | 35 |
| 2.4.2 | PHOS Front End Card | |
| 2.4.3 | Readout Control Unit | |
| 2.4.4 | PHOS Trigger Generation Hardware | |

| | 2.4.5 | BusyBox | 43 |
|-----|---------|---|----|
| СНА | PTER 3 | DETECTOR CONTROL SYSTEM FOR THE FEE | 47 |
| 3. | 1 Intro | DDUCTION | 47 |
| 3. | 2 DCS | BOARD SOFTWARE | 49 |
| | 3.2.1 | Communication Software on the DCS board | 49 |
| | 3.2.2 | The DCS Board Logical Architecture | 50 |
| 3. | 3 DCS | BOARD FIRMWARE | 51 |
| | 3.3.1 | Overview and Specification | 51 |
| | 3.3.2 | DCS board Flavours | 52 |
| 3.4 | 4 RCU | COMMUNICATION MODULE | 53 |
| | 3.4.1 | Overview | 53 |
| | 3.4.2 | Modes of Operation | 54 |
| | 3.4.3 | Definition of the interconnecting DCS-RCU bus lines | 56 |
| | 3.4.4 | RCU Interrupt Handling | 56 |
| | 3.4.5 | MessageBuffer Functional Overview | 57 |
| | 3.4.6 | MessageBuffer Configuration Block | 57 |
| | 3.4.7 | DCS Bus Protocol | 58 |
| | 3.4.8 | Flash Bus Protocol | 59 |
| | 3.4.9 | SelectMAP Bus Protocol | 60 |
| | 3.4.10 | Radiation Tolerance Measures | 60 |
| | 3.4.11 | BusyBox and Trigger-OR Flavour | 61 |
| 3.: | 5 RCU | MAIN FPGA IN THE FEE DCS | 63 |
| | 3.5.1 | Introduction | 63 |
| | 3.5.2 | DCS Interface | 64 |
| | 3.5.3 | Monitoring and Safety Module | 66 |
| 3. | 6 PHOS | S FEC BOARD CONTROLLER | 68 |
| | 3.6.1 | Introduction and Requirements | 68 |
| | 3.6.2 | TPC Board Controller | 69 |
| | 3.6.3 | PHOS Board Controller Introduction | 70 |
| | 3.6.4 | Registers | 72 |
| | 3.6.5 | Health Monitoring | 74 |
| | 3.6.6 | High Voltage APD Bias Settings | 76 |

| 3.6.7 | RCU Communication | 78 |
|---------|--|-----|
| 3.6.8 | Radiation Robustness Measures | 79 |
| CHAPTER | 4 RCU RADIATION TOLERANCE SOLUTION | 81 |
| 4.1 RA | DIATION EFFECTS IN INTEGRATED CIRCUITS | 81 |
| 4.1.1 | Single Event Effects | 81 |
| 4.1.2 | Single Event Upset Mitigation Techniques | 83 |
| 4.2 CH | DICE OF TECHNOLOGY | |
| 4.2.1 | FPGA Technologies | 84 |
| 4.2.2 | Why an SRAM based FPGA is selected on the RCU | 84 |
| 4.3 AC | TIVE PARTIAL RECONFIGURATION | |
| 4.3.1 | Xilinx Virtex-II Pro XC2VP7 Architecture | 85 |
| 4.3.2 | Configuration of Xilinx Devices | 86 |
| 4.3.3 | SelectMAP Interface | |
| 4.3.4 | Limitations of Active Partial Reconfiguration | 89 |
| 4.4 AC | TIVE PARTIAL RECONFIGURATION SOLUTION ON THE RCU MOTHERBOARD | |
| 4.4.1 | Introduction | 91 |
| 4.4.2 | RCU Flash Architecture | |
| 4.4.3 | Firmware Overview | 94 |
| 4.4.4 | Registers | 95 |
| 4.4.5 | Available Commands | 95 |
| 4.4.6 | Configuration Controller | 96 |
| 4.4.7 | Power Up Detection | |
| 4.4.8 | SelectMAP interface Implementation | |
| 4.4.9 | Radiation Tolerance Measures | |
| 4.5 Int | EGRATION WITH THE FEE DCS | |
| 4.6 AC | TIVE PARTIAL RECONFIGURATION ON OTHER DEVICES | |
| 4.7 Eff | ECTIVITY OF THE ACTIVE PARTIAL RECONFIGURATION | |
| CHAPTER | 5 PROCESSING OF TRIGGER INFORMATION | 105 |
| 5.1 Sys | TEM REQUIREMENTS AND OVERVIEW | |
| 5.2 Tri | GGER RECEPTION AND HANDLING IN TPC & PHOS FEE | |
| 5.2.1 | Introduction | |

| 5.2.2 | Functional Requirements | |
|-----------|--|-----|
| 5.2.3 | Input from the Trigger System | |
| 5.2.4 | Fee Trigger Receiver Overview | |
| 5.2.5 | Channel A decoding | |
| 5.2.6 | Channel B decoding | |
| 5.2.7 | Trigger Sequence Validation | |
| 5.2.8 | Output to Internal Logic | |
| 5.2.9 | Registers | |
| 5.2.10 | Adaptions for the BusyBox | |
| 5.2.11 | Radiation Tolerance Measures | 120 |
| 5.3 Trig | GER DISTRIBUTION | 121 |
| 5.4 DATA | A READOUT | 121 |
| 5.4.1 | The Readout Process | 121 |
| 5.4.2 | Board Controller in the Data Readout Process | |
| 5.4.3 | Event Building | |
| 5.5 BUSY | Box | 127 |
| 5.5.1 | Basic Functionality | 127 |
| 5.5.2 | Firmware Architecture | 127 |
| 5.6 Cond | CLUSION | 129 |
| CHAPTER 6 | VERIFICATION AND TESTING | |
| 6.1 Fund | TIONAL VERIFICATION OF THE FIRMWARE MODULES | |
| 6.1.1 | Introduction | |
| 6.1.2 | Testbench for the Trigger Receiver Module | |
| 6.1.3 | Testbench for the PHOS Board Controller | |
| 6.1.4 | Testbench for the RCU support FPGA firmware | |
| 6.1.5 | Testbench for the DCS board firmware. | |
| 6.2 Hari | DWARE TESTS OF THE FIRMWARE MODULES | |
| 6.2.1 | Trigger Receiver Module | |
| 6.2.2 | PHOS Board Controller | |
| 6.2.3 | RCU support FPGA | |
| 6.2.4 | DCS board Firmware | |
| 6.3 Irra | DIATION AND FAULT INJECTION TESTS | |

| 6.4 S | YSTEM INTEGRATION TES | TS AND COMMISIONING | 141 |
|-----------------------|--|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 6.4. | Introduction | | 141 |
| 6.4.2 | 2 TPC Electronics Con | mmisioning | 141 |
| 6.4. | B PHOS commisioning | g | 142 |
| 6.4.4 | Tests involving RCU | firmware version 2.0 | 143 |
| CHAPTE | R 7 ERROR HANDL | ING ON A SYSTEM LEVEL | 145 |
| 7.1 I | NTRODUCTION | | 145 |
| 7.2 E | RRORS IN THE RCU MAIN | FPGA | 145 |
| 7.2. | Consequences | | 145 |
| 7.2.2 | Proposed Solutions | for Error Handling | 146 |
| 7.3 E | RRORS IN THE TRIGGER AN | ND DATA PATH | 148 |
| 7.4 E | RRORS IN THE FEE DCS | | 149 |
| 7.5 0 | ONCLUSION | | 150 |
| СНАРТЕ | R 8 CONCLUSION A | AND OUTLOOK | 151 |
| APPENDI | X A LIST OF PUB | LICATIONS | 153 |
| A.1 | PUBLICATIONS SIGNIFIC | CANTLY CONTRIBUTED TO | 153 |
| A.2 | ALL PUBLICATIONS | | 153 |
| APPENDI | X B LIST OF ABB | REVIATIONS | 155 |
| APPENDI | X C DESIGN MET | HODOLOGY | 159 |
| C.1 | INTRODUCTION | | 159 |
| C.2 | DOCUMENTATION | | 159 |
| <i>C.2</i> . | I Requirement Specifi | cation | 159 |
| <i>C.2.</i> | 2 Coding Guidelines a | und In Code Documentation | 159 |
| C.3 | VERSION MANAGEMENT | Г | 160 |
| С.З. | Release Versions | | 160 |
| С.З. | 2 CVS | | 160 |
| C.4 | | | |
| | PUBLISHING | | 161 |
| APPENDI | PUBLISHING | FIRMWARE VERSION CHANGE LOGS | 161 163 |
| APPENDI D.1 | PUBLISHING X D TABLES AND TABLE LEGEND |) FIRMWARE VERSION CHANGE LOGS | 161 163 163 |
| APPENDI D.1 D.2 | PUBLISHING X D TABLES AND TABLE LEGEND DCS BOARD FIRMWARE | FIRMWARE VERSION CHANGE LOGS | 161 163 163 164 |

| D.2.2 | Version Change Log |
|----------|---|
| D.3 | RCU MAIN FPGA DCS INTERFACE |
| D.3.1 | <i>Tables</i> |
| D.3.2 | Version Change Log 171 |
| D.4 | PHOS BOARD CONTROLLER |
| D.4.1 | Tables |
| D.4.2 | Version Change Log |
| D.5 | RCU SUPPORT FPGA FIRMWARE |
| D.5.1 | Tables |
| D.5.2 | Version Change Log |
| D.6 | TRIGGER RECEIVER MODULE |
| D.6.1 | Trigger Receiver Firmware Tables184 |
| D.6.2 | Tables Defining Inputs to the Trigger Receiver Module |
| D.6.3 | Version Change Log |
| D.7 | Other Tables |
| APPENDIX | X E INDEX 195 |
| REFEREN | CES |

Chapter 1

The ALICE Experiment

This chapter gives a brief introduction to the ALICE experiment at CERN. Quark Gluon Plasma is discussed since the main goal of ALICE is to investigate its properties. An overview of the ALICE detector with a brief introduction to the various parts of the system is then given. The PHOton Spectrometer and the Time Projection Chamber are described more in detail, while the other sub-detectors are mentioned briefly. In addition the three main logical systems of the ALICE detector are described on an overall system level: The Trigger System, the Data Acquisition System (including High Level Trigger) and the Detector Control System.

1.1 Introduction

The Large Hadron Collider (LHC) is located at CERN¹ near Geneva, Switzerland. CERN is the largest research facility in the world for particle and nuclear physics. The LHC is a circular particle accelerator with two adjacent beams moving in opposite directions. In four different locations the beams intersect, allowing for collisions. The experiments using the Large Hadron Collider are located at these intersections, of which ALICE (A Large Ion Collider Experiment) is one. The main goal of ALICE is to study the properties of Quark Gluon Plasma. Quark Gluon Plasma is a state of matter defined by the quarks and gluons no longer being bound together and confined in Hadrons.

The ALICE detector is at the time of writing in the final stage of commissioning. It has an onion like architecture with several different sub-detectors surrounding the beam pipe in layers from inside to out, where it is wrapped by a magnet (5 meters tall and wide). All of the sub-detectors are tailor-made to detect different particles created in the collision.

¹ CERN is an acronym for Conseil Européen pour la Recherche Nucléaire which was a provisional council for setting up the laboratory, and was established by 11 European governments in 1952. Currently there are 20 member countries and 8 countries/organizations have so called observer status. http://www.cern.ch)

This thesis focuses on the instrumentation for two of the ALICE sub-detectors; the Time Projection Chamber (TPC) and the PHOton Spectrometer (PHOS), since most of the electronics are shared between the two sub-detectors. The TPC detector is the main tracking device in ALICE, and is a gas filled barrel exposed to both a magnetic and an electric field. Charged particles crossing the gas will ionize the atoms in the gas and then the electrons will drift in electric files to the end caps of the barrel. By measuring the arrival of the electrons at both ends of the chamber, the TPC will reconstruct the paths of the original charged particles. The electronics used for data readout are located at the end of the chamber directly behind the detector pads to minimize channel noise and crosstalk. This location implies that the radiation the electronics is there to measure will also be potentially harmful to the electronic devices. The PHOS detector is one of the outermost detectors in ALICE and is detecting photons from the collision. It is made of lead tungstate crystals, in which electromagnetic showers will be generated when the crystal is hit by high energy photons. The readout electronics are situated directly behind the crystals, and as for TPC, located in a radiation environment.

The data readout in ALICE is trigger based. This means that any collision will be detected by a group of fast detectors that will notify a central trigger system. The central trigger system will distribute triggers to the different sub-detectors to start buffering and readout of data. When the data is read out, it is moved from buffers in the readout electronics via an optical link to computer farms where further analysis is done before the data is stored to disk. As the potential data rate from the readout electronics sub-systems is approximately an order of magnitude higher than what can be stored to disk, or even transmitted over the optical data links, data processing and compressing are done by the readout electronics.

Because of the flexibility, the cost and the possibility to easily do future upgrades of the electronics, it has been decided to make extensive use of commercial SRAM based Field Programmable Gate Arrays (FPGAs) in the readout electronics. The other side of the coin is that these devices are generally not very radiation tolerant. The architecture of the ALICE detector is such that physically shielding of the electronics is not possible, which impose challenges in designing the electronics. This implies that the concern with radiation related errors need to be handled with other techniques such as firmware mitigation techniques.

The radiation environment is not the only challenge when designing the readout electronics. As the readout electronic devices are located directly on the detector devices, they are physically unavailable as soon as the ALICE detector is fully operative. It is vital that they are operated under stable temperatures and that if any

node in the system is misbehaving, it should immediately be powered off and analyzed whenever possible. This implies that a control system that can be operated remotely is needed.

1.2 Large Hadron Collider

The LHC is currently in the final stages of commissioning, and will be started at the 10. of September 2008. When finished, it will be able to accelerate hadrons to higher energies than any particle accelerator has ever done. The LHC has a circumference of 27 km and has two adjacent beam pipes where bunches of particles are accelerated to a beam energy of 5.5 TeV per nucleon for lead nuclei beams and 7 TeV for proton beams. The bunches are then collided within 4 experimental areas where four main experiments are located:

- *ALICE (A Large Ion Collider Experiment)*: ALICE is specially designed to look for Quark Gluon Plasma (see section 1.3)
- *ATLAS (A Toroidal LHC ApparatuS)*: ATLAS is mainly looking for the Higgs boson, which can be understood as a missing piece in the standard model.
- *CMS (Compact Muon Solenoid):* CMS is also investigating physics in the TeV range and looking for the Higgs boson.
- *LHCb (LHC beauty):* LHCb is designed for investigating physics related to the bottom quark, particularly investigating CP violations in the b hadron interactions.

Additionally there are a few smaller experiments sharing the experimental areas doing forward physics².

² The experimental definition of forward physics is "All processes in which particles are produced at small polar angles (i.e. large rapidities)". Citation from: Pierre Van Mechelen - "Forward" Physics at the LHC - HERA-LHC Workshop - DESY - March 15, 2007

1.3 ALICE Physics



Figure 1-1: High Energy Physics Phase Diagram. From [1].

ALICE will study the properties of Quark Gluon Plasma. Normally, quarks can not exist alone, only when they are bound together into hadrons by the force carrier for the strong force (gluons). If trying to separate them, a new quark - antiquark pair would be created in the force field. When the temperature and/or pressure are high enough, the hadrons undergo a phase transition and Quark Gluon Plasma is formed. In Quark Gluon Plasma the quarks and gluons are deconfined like molecules in a gas. Figure 1-1 is a phase diagram showing the different phases of matter from hadrons to Quark Gluon Plasma. According to the Big Bang theory, Quark Gluon Plasma is believed to have existed up until the universe was 10⁻⁵ seconds old. At this time the pressure and temperature had dropped so much that a process called freeze-out was taking place, in which the quarks and the gluons bound together to form different kinds of hadrons, amongst others the basic building blocks of nature; protons and neutrons. During the Pb-Pb collisions LHC will generate enough energy to create Quark Gluon Plasma.

It is not possible to observe Quark Gluon Plasma directly, only so called footprints can be detected. Details on the experimental observables can be found in for instance [2].

1.4 ALICE Detector

1.4.1 Overview



Figure 1-2: The ALICE detector. From [3]

Each of the collisions in LHC is called an event. An event produces a lot of secondary particles. Some of these secondary particles are so short lived that they decay long before leaving any detectable tracks. In order to look for the various decay products, ALICE is designed to be a multi component detector that studies different aspects of an event. Each component is used for measuring particle energies and momentum, and/or for distinguishing different particle types.

The ALICE detector is optimized to study heavy ion collision. The onion-like structure where the various sub-detectors are located in different layers from inside to out is shown in Figure 1-2. The interaction point is in the centre of the detector. Except for ACORDE (ALICE Cosmic Ray Detector), all the barell sub-detectors are located inside the L3 magnet, which is a 12.1 m x 5.75 m magnet generating a magnetic field of 0.5 T[3]. The data readout of ALICE is trigger based. This means that certain fast detectors are contributing to triggers that are distributed to the sub-detectors. The sub-detectors then start data buffering and readout operations.

The functionality of TPC and PHOS will be discussed in the next sections since the work described in thesis are implemented for these two sub-detectors.



1.4.2 Time Projection Chamber (TPC)

Figure 1-3: Layout of the ALICE TPC. To the left a three dimensional view and to the right are some details concerning the field cage.

The TPC [3, 4] is the main tracking detector in ALICE. As shown in Figure 1-2 it is surrounding the beam pipe outside of the Inner Tracking System detector. The layout of the TPC is shown in Figure 1-3. The TPC is a cylindrical gas volume of 88 m³ that is divided in two drift regions by a high voltage electrode. The field cage seen in the figure has an inner radius of about 85 cm, and an outer radius of about 280 cm, and an overall length along the beam direction of 510 cm.

In the field cage the charged particles formed in the collisions ionize the gas and electrons drift in the electric field towards the end plates at each side of the detector. The gas in the ALICE TPC is a mixture of Ne, CO_2 and N_2 , which gives the wanted ionization properties and diffusion inside the field cage. The electrons in this gas mixture have, for an electrical drift field that is 400 V/cm, a drift velocity of 2.83 cm/µs. This means that electrons starting from the central plane take about 88 µs to reach the end plates.

Each of the two end plates is divided into 18 sectors where conventional Multi Wire Proportional Chambers provide the required charge amplification. The readout plane is divided into 570132 pads of different sizes. As the track density is highest near the centre of the detector, the wire spacing and the pad size are smaller in that location to provide better spatial resolution.

Directly behind the readout pad plane is the location of the Front-end electronics (Fee) of the TPC. As a consequence, the Fee are located in a radiation environment with all the challenges this implies.

1.4.3 PHOton Spectrometer (PHOS)



Figure 1-4: The PHOS detector. To the right are the 5 PHOS modules; to the left is the PHOS module with strip units installed onto cooling plates.

The PHOS detector [3, 5] is one of the outermost detectors in Figure 1-2, at a distance of 460 cm from the interaction point. In the initial run there will only be one PHOS module present, but the final configuration holds five modules with an angular coverage of 5*20 degrees, as shown to the right in Figure 1-4. The pseudo rapidity coverage is -0.12 to 0.12.

Each PHOS module is built up of two different sub-detectors. The main detector is a highly segmented ElectroMagnetic Calorimeter (EMC), while the second detector is a Charged Particle Veto (CPV) detector. The EMC is measuring electromagnetic showers of up to 100 GeV via a large matrix of PbWO₄ crystals. The EMC for one PHOS module is segmented into 3584 detection cells, that each consists of a crystal and an avalanche photo diode. To increase the light yield and hence the energy resolution of the PbWO₄ crystals, the nominal operating temperature of the EMC modules are set to $-25^{\circ}C^{3}$. The crystal strips are located in a cold enclosure, whereas the Fee are located outside this enclosure.

The CPV detector is a Multi Wire Proportional Chamber that is placed on top of the EMC module with a distance of about 5 mm. The purpose is to discriminate charged particles from neutral particles. The CPV detector is currently only in a prototype version and will not be installed at the start up of LHC.

³ The first installed PHOS module will operate at room temperature during the first year.

1.4.4 Other Detectors

In addition to PHOS and TPC there are numerous other sub-detectors in ALICE, of which some are marked in Figure 1-2. The detectors can be divided into the central detectors and the forward detectors. The central detectors (or barrel detectors) are the detectors located around the collision point, while the forward detectors are located along the beam axis on the edge of the magnet. PHOS and TPC are central detectors. Details concerning the various sub-detectors of ALICE can be found in [3].

Detectors other than TPC and PHOS that are interesting in the context of this work are especially the ElectroMagnetic Calorimeter (EMCal) and the Forward Multiplicity Detector (FMD), since these detectors share many of the electronic components with TPC and PHOS. The location of EMCal is given in Figure 1-2. FMD is one of the forward detectors and measures the charged particles emitted at small angles relative to the beam. Of other important physics detectors are the Inner Tracking System, Transition Radiation Detector (TRD), Time of Flight Detector, the High Momentum Particle Identification Detector and the Muon Spectrometer. One of the main electronic components of TPC and PHOS, the DCS board (see section 0), is also in use on the TRD detector of which it was originally designed for.

The Level 0 (L0) trigger (see section 1.6.2) in ALICE combines the input from detectors with fast trigger capability (T0, V0, Silicon Pixel Detector (SPD), TOF, PHOS, EMCal, Muons, ACORDE). The T0 detector measures the event time with very good precision (< 25 ps). The V0 detector is used as minimum bias trigger and for rejection of beam gas background. ACORDE triggers on cosmic rays for calibration and alignment purposes. As PHOS and EMCal are electromagnetic calorimeters they detect a collision within the (L0) trigger decision window and can then participate in the trigger generation.

1.5 Radiation Environment of the Fee

One of the major challenges in building the ALICE detector is that the radiation which the detector shall measure is also potentially harmful for the electronics that will do the actual measurements.

The potential radiation damage to a device is dependent on the particle charge and energy. Simplified, a particle with high charge and low energy is more ionizing and thus more damaging than a particle with low charge and high energy.

There two types of radiation effects that are of concern for the electronics: 1) the cumulative effects, which are related to the total $dose^4$ that the electronics are exposed to over the lifetime of the project, and 2) the single event effects, which are caused by a single particle. Radiation effects in electronics are discussed in section 4.1.

Due to the relatively low total dose of < 6 Gy cumulative effects are expected to be of little concern in the TPC electronics [6]. However, in the location of the TPC Fee, simulations of the radiation environment show a substantial amount of energetic hadrons (E > 10 MeV). A flux⁵ of maximum 400 particles/cm²/s can be expected at the innermost part of the TPC. The flux is decreasing further away from the collision point and in the outermost part of the TPC the expected flux is ~130 particles/cm²/s. Due to their low ionizing capability, low charge and high energy, these hadrons are not expected to directly cause a single event effect. Instead they can interact with the silicon nuclei producing highly ionizing secondary particles capable of inducing single event effects. Combined results from the simulation of the radiation environment and from irradiation tests can be used to predict the expected number of single event effects and functional errors in the electronics [7, 8].

For PHOS no similar simulations have been performed, but since PHOS is the outermost detector and the electronics are shielded by the crystals, both the flux and total dose for PHOS is expected to be significantly lower. However, this does not mean that the potential radiation effects on the electronics in PHOS ca be ignored.

1.6 Online Systems for the ALICE TPC/PHOS Electronics

1.6.1 Experiment Control System

The different online systems in ALICE are controlled by a single overlying master system: the Experiment Control System (ECS)[9]. The ECS has several tasks. 1) It provides the operators with a unified view of the experiment and a central point from which to steer the experiment operations. 2) It permits independent and concurrent

⁴ The *dose* (or total ionizing dose) is the energy deposited by the charged particle in a given material and is measured in Gray (Gy). 1 Gy corresponds roughly to the generation of 4.10^{11} electron-hole pair in 1 cm³ silicon.

 $^{^{5}}$ The flux is the number of particles passing through a given area per time unit, and can be considered as the intensity of the radiation. Flux is measured in particles/cm²/sec.

activities on parts of the experiment by different operators. 3) It coordinates the operations of the control systems active on each detector: the trigger control, the detector control, the Data Acquisition (DAQ) run control, and the High Level Trigger (HLT) control. These sub-systems exist in parallel to each other, having no or little cross communication between them.



Figure 1-5: The different online system discussed in the subsequent sections in context of the ECS. From [9].

1.6.2 Trigger, Timing and Control System

The heart of the ALICE Trigger, Timing and Control (TTC) System [3, 9] is the Central Trigger Processor (CTP) [10]. The CTP is designed to select events containing potential interesting physics at rates that are scaled down to suit the restrictions imposed by the bandwidth of the DAQ system and the HLT. One of the main challenges for the ALICE trigger is to make optimum use of the different sub-detectors that are varying both in readout time and detection time. It is also important that the trigger selections are done in a way that is optimised for different running modes, normally Pb-Pb and p-p. The triggers generated by the TTC system are split into a three level hierarchy, of which the first two are considered as a fast first response to the sub-detectors. Each level of trigger is filtering out events that for some reason are not considered interesting. The L0 trigger inputs. A Level 1 accept (L1a) trigger arriving at the detectors at 6.5 µs includes all remaining fast inputs. All in all there are 50 potential inputs for the L0 trigger and 24 inputs for the L1a.



Figure 1-6: Sketch of the Fee for PHOS detector that shows how PHOS acts as a trigger detector as well as how PHOS uses triggers generated by CTP for data readout.

The final level of the trigger, the Level 2 accept (L2a) trigger, is decided by the past future protection condition. The purpose of this is to make sure that pile-ups corrupting the data are avoided within a programmable time interval before and after the collision. Under normal running conditions, this time is decided by the drift time of the TPC detector, i.e. it is issued 88 μ s after the time of interaction. The L2a trigger is distributed to the sub-detectors as messages containing information identifying the event. The event identification consists of two parts: the Bunchcrossing ID and the Orbit ID. In the LHC, there are at all times 3563 bunches orbiting in each ring. The Bunchcrossing ID is the number of the bunch that is involved in the collision; while

the Orbit ID gives the number of times all bunches have rotated since the start of the run. Some of these bunches are empty. For p-p it is foreseen that 2808 bunches are filled with protons, while of Pb-Pb only 608 bunches have lead nuclei in them[11]. As a consequence the collision rate is far higher for p-p runs than for Pb-Pb runs.

The CTP distributes the triggers to the sub-detectors using Local Trigger Units (LTUs). There is one LTU per sub-detector. The LTU forwards the trigger signals to the Fee of each sub-detector, but can also be used in stand alone mode for debugging purposes. In this case software on the LTU is emulating the CTP behaviour. Figure 1-6 shows a sketch of the Fee for the PHOS detector that exemplifies the trigger distribution to the sub-detectors. The same logical overview is valid for TPC except for the part that involves the trigger generation. PHOS contributes to one of the trigger sources for L0 triggers and to three (high p_t , mid p_t and low p_t) of the trigger sources for L1a triggers. More details on the data received by the Fee via the Trigger System are discussed in section 5.2.3.

An important feedback for the TTC system from the Fee is the *busy* signal. The *busy* signal is received by the LTU for the given sub-detector. The LTU forwards it to the CTP that masks any incoming triggers from being distributed to the Fee. This is needed if the buffers on the Fee are full and no more data can be accepted. For TPC, PHOS, FMD and EMCal this is solved by using an additional device: the BusyBox. The BusyBox sits outside of the radiation environment and asserts the *busy* signal based on information from the LTU and the DAQ system. A short overview over the BusyBox is given in section 2.4.5.

The CTP synchronizes all triggers received from the trigger detectors with the LHC clock[11]. The LHC clock has a frequency of 40.08 MHz. It is generated from the frequency of the orbiting bunches in the LHC, and distributed as the global clock for all the experiments using the LHC. For ALICE, this clock is distributed by the TTC system together with the triggers and the trigger messages.

1.6.3 Data Acquisition System

The ALICE DAQ system is in charge of moving the data from the detector up to the central data storage of ALICE, concentrate the data and do the eventbuilding [3, 9]. An overview of the ALICE DAQ architecture including TTC and HLT is illustrated in Figure 1-7. This figure exemplifies the architecture for different sub-detector setups. Event fragments from the participating sub-detectors are injected on the Detector Data Links (DDLs) when an L2a trigger has arrived, and all different sub-detectors use the same standard protocol for data transmission. The DDL consists of

three parts. 1) The Source Interface Unit (SIU) which sits on the detector Fee, 2) the Destination Interface Unit (DIU) that is connected to the Data Readout Received Card (D-RORC), and 3) a duplex multi mode optical fiber which connects the SIU and the DIU. The data is collected by a D-RORC on the Local Data Concentrator (LDC). The role of the LDC is to ship the event fragments to a farm of PCs called Global Data Concentrators (GDCs), where complete events are built before being sent disc storage. The Event Destination Manager (EDM) tells the LDCs which GDC computer is available for event reconstruction. The software performing the data acquisition in the ALICE DAQ system is DATE (Data Acquisition and Test Environment). DATE collects the data from the DDLs connected to all detectors. The DAQ system includes a configurable list of which nodes that is expected to be participating in the run. This is the DAQ equipment list. If one of the nodes included in the list does not deliver any event fragments within a given timeout period, the ongoing run is aborted by the DAQ system.



Figure 1-7: The overall architecture of the Data Acquisition System, also including the interface to the High Level Trigger. From [3] (edited).

Several triggers are so frequent that the limiting factor is the performance of the DAQ system. Because of this the main task of the TTC system, the DAQ system and HLT is to select interesting physics events. In Figure 1-7 several ways of dealing with this is shown, of which one is the HLT reducing the amount of data stored to disk significantly. The HLT is briefly discussed in the next section. The *busy* signal is used to mask triggers in case the buffers on the Fee are full. For some sub-detectors the *busy* are set by the Fee itself, while for TPC, PHOS, EMCal and FMD, the *busy* is

set by an external device. Another way of masking triggers is done by the DAQ itself. The DAQ sets a flag to the TTC system if only events defined as rare should issue a trigger. By setting this flag when the temporary storage systems of the DAQ are in danger of being saturated it is ensured that the potentially most interesting events are kept for analysis.

1.6.4 High Level Trigger

The purpose of the HLT [3, 9] is to reduce the overall data rate to fit the constraints given by the DAQ archiving rate that is 1 GB/s. This is achieved by event selection (trigger on event), selection of Region of Interest (RoI) and data compression. The HLT cluster is a PC farm with several hundred nodes for fast online data analysis. The events are filtered so that only events considered interesting are stored to disc for more detailed analysis. A copy of the raw data from the DAQ are forwarded through the D-RORC on the LDC to the HLT Readout Receiver Card (H-RORC) that sits on the Front-end Processor (FEP), see Figure 1-7. The FEP forwards the data to the HLT cluster. The output of the HLT is streamed back to the DAQ for permanent storage, containing region of interest information, trigger information, event summary data and the compressed event data itself.



1.6.5 Detector Control System

Figure 1-8: The three-layered logical architecture of the DCS exemplified with DCS for low voltage, cooling and Fee.

The primary task of the ALICE Detector Control System (DCS) [3, 9] is to make sure that the operation of the ALICE experiment is done safely in a correct manner. As all

experimental equipment can be operated/controlled remotely via the DCS, the complete ALICE experiment can be operated from a single location: the ALICE Control Room. The DCS is concerned with all parts of the detector from gas, cooling, ventilation, access control, and most importantly in the context of this work; the Fee. The DCS is a heterogeneous system where the tasks are distributed over many PCs and embedded computing devices. This ensures a scalable design, and allows independent operation of all the different parts involved.

The DCS forms a three layered structure both physically and logically. This is shown in Figure 1-8 for the operation of low voltage, monitoring of temperatures and the Fee. The Supervisory Layer is the top level with the operator's user interface, implemented in a commercial Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition system: ProzessVisualisierungs- und Steuerungs-System (PVSS). Examples of such interfaces for the Fee DCS are given in Figure 3-10 and Figure 4-11. The Control Layer is a communication layer consisting of several PCs, and the Field Layer is where the different devices are found. All the nodes in the system work in parallel, feeding the operator with useful information concerning the status of the system, or responding to commands given at the top level.

The Fee DCS is responsible for configuring, monitoring and controlling the Fee of sub-detector systems, and it is important to notice that the control system is detached from the data flow. The control system is designed to automatically act upon different conditions that may occur in the equipment. The configuration task includes uploading configuration data to the Field Devices. This data is stored in the Configuration Database and includes physical location of the equipment, hardware addresses and different operational modes. This information covers both hardware and software. The DCS archive database is used for storing the monitored values.

Chapter 2

TPC and PHOS Front-end Electronics

As TPC and PHOS Fee have a common design and share most of the components, the description of the two systems is combined in this chapter. In the introduction the Fee are put in context with the DAQ system, the DCS and the TTC system. Then the topology of the PHOS Fee and TPC Fee is discussed, before the different components of the Front-end electronics are presented.

2.1 Introduction

The Fee of the ALICE TPC and PHOS detector consist of all the hardware components that are involved in the readout of the data and system monitoring and control. The Fee have to comply with strict requirements defined in [4] for TPC. The original requirements for PHOS are described in [5], but the Fee for PHOS have later been redefined and now the architecture and many of the components are the same for TPC and PHOS. Originally, the concept of the Fee was designed for TPC but because of the flexibility of the system it was adopted by other ALICE sub-detectors of which PHOS is one. Related to the readout and the control systems the following requirements must be fulfilled:

- As the Fee are sited close to the collision point, especially for TPC, the radiation tolerance is of vital importance. A major concern is that the electronics are operating in an environment that in itself is a source of errors. This radiation environment is described in section 1.5.
- The electronics are physically unavailable when the system is operative. This implies that remote operation of the Fee should be possible, and that vital components should be remotely upgradable. It also means that it is mandatory that the devices that cannot be upgraded are reliable and stable.
- The TPC event rate of central Pb-Pb and p-p events are 200 Hz and 1 kHz respectively. The TPC will at these rates produce about 140 GB/s and 710 GB/s of data each[12]. Per Readout Node this is about 650 MB/s and 3.28 GB/s produced data. The data throughput per Readout Node for PHOS is



slightly lower. As the bandwidth of the DDL is 200 MB/s, this implies that intelligent data compression and readout schemes must be implemented.

Figure 2-1: The TPC Fee. Top: Front End Cards from the same partition are connected by means of a custom backplane. Bottom: The RCU interfaces the partition with the Data Acquisition, Detector Control and Trigger Systems. From [13].

A schematic overview of the Fee for TPC in context with the online systems in ALICE is given in Figure 2-1. For both PHOS and TPC the Fee consist of a set of Front End Cards (FECs) that receive analogue data from the detector sensors. The FEC amplifies and shapes the analogue signal, performs analogue to digital conversion and digital filtering of the data. As shown in the topmost part in Figure 2-1 up to 25 FECs can be connected to one Readout Control Unit (RCU) via two separate branches for the TPC, while for PHOS there are always 28 FECs per RCU. As PHOS is also a trigger detector, there is additionally a Trigger Region Unit (TRU) board on each branch. The TRU is discussed in section 2.4.4. The bottom part of Figure 2-1 shows the RCU connected to the FECs via the backplanes. The RCU consist of the RCU Motherboard, the DCS board and the SIU. The DCS board acts as a node in the Field Layer of the DCS and connects to the higher hierarchical levels of DCS via a standard Ethernet connection. The DCS board is also the receiver of the master clock and triggers via an optical link to the TTC system. The SIU connects to the DAQ system and pushes the data out on the DDL. All these components are discussed in more details in the subsequent sections.

There are 216 RCUs in the TPC, reading out a total number of 570132 channels connected to equally many detector pads. In the final state of the PHOS detector with all five modules installed, there will be 20 RCUs that altogether serve 35840 channels connected to 17920 crystals (There is one high gain and one low gain channel per crystal).



2.2 TPC Fee Topology

Figure 2-2: Each TPC sector is divided into 6 readout partitions with 18, 20 or 25 Front End Cards. Each readout partition is configured and readout using one RCU connected via two independent branches. From [13]

The TPC detector is divided into 36 sectors, 18 on each of the endplates of the TPC barrel. These sectors are divided into 2 readout chambers, the inner readout chamber and the outer readout chamber. There are 2 readout partitions in the inner chamber and 4 readout partitions in the outer chamber. One readout partition is read out by one RCU. As seen in Figure 2-2 there is an unequal number of FECs on the different partitions. In the area of the TPC covered by the inner readout chamber the occupancy is higher, and therefore the readout pads are smaller to provide a better spatial resolution. This implies that the number of channels in this region is higher, and more FECs are needed.



Figure 2-3: Each PHOS module is divided into 4 readout partitions in context of data readout. When in context of PHOS as a trigger detector, one branch is regarded as a trigger region and is served by one TRU.

The PHOS detector consists of 5 modules. Each PHOS module (Figure 2-3) is divided into 4 readout partitions that are served by 1 RCU each. One readout partition is mapped to a matrix of 32 x 28 crystals, reading out two channels per crystal divided into high gain and low gain. As for the TPC one branch consists of two PCB backplanes, one for data and one for control signals, and 14 FECs are connected per branch. Additionally for PHOS a ~40 cm flat ribbon cable extension connects the PCB backplanes to the RCU. The TRU on each branch defines this area to be a trigger region, connecting to all the FECs on the given branch. The TRU connects to the RCU using the same PCB backplane as the FECs.

2.3 PHOS Fee Topology

2.4 Front End Electronics Devices

2.4.1 TPC Front End Card

The TPC FEC (Figure 2-4) connects to the detector pads and processes the signals generated by the charges deposited on the pads. One pad maps to one readout channel. There are two important devices involved in the signal processing: the PreAmplifier ShAper (PASA) and the ALICE TPC Readout Chip (ALTRO) chip. On the FEC there are 8 PASAs and 8 ALTROs supporting altogether 128 channels per board.



Figure 2-4: Top view of the TPC FEC. From [13]

Figure 2-5 shows the signal processing path of each channel in the TPC Fee. The charge collected on the TPC pads is amplified and integrated by the PASA chip. It produces a pulse with a rise time of 150 ns and a shaping time of 190 ns. The pulse is then sampled by a 10 bit Analogue to Digital Converter (ADC) at a configurable rate of 2.5 MHz to 10 MHz. The digitized signal is processed by digital filters that allow for baseline restoration, pedestal subtraction, zero suppression and tail cancellation, before being buffered in a memory. The ADC and the digital processing logic are contained in the ALTRO [14]. The digital processing is configurable from the RCU.



Figure 2-5: Block diagram showing the signal path in the TPC Fee. From [3].

The controlling functionality on the FEC is maintained by the Board Controller, marked BC in Figure 2-4. The main task of the TPC Board Controller is to monitor the health of the FEC by reading voltage levels, currents and temperatures. The Board Controller is discussed in section 3.6.

2.4.2 PHOS Front End Card

As seen by Figure 2-6, the PHOS FEC includes many of the same components as the TPC FEC. The PHOS FEC contains 4 ALTROs serving 32 inputs from the charge sensitive amplifiers (CSPs) that are split into high gain and low gain signals using altogether 64 ALTRO channels. The digital part from the ALTRO and to the backplane connectors is identical to the TPC FEC, but the PHOS FEC implements two additional features: 1) High Voltage Bias Controllers that sets the bias voltage to the APDs, and 2) the Fast-OR output to the TRU. This is a special fast shaper that sums 4 inputs into a Fast-OR output signal. With the 32 input channels, this gives 8 analogue sums per FEC that are made available on the output connector. The signal path of PHOS is shown in Figure 2-7. Except for the trigger generation part, it is similar to the signal path of the TPC FEC.

The Board Controller controls the board; monitoring voltage levels, currents and temperatures made available by 3 ADCs placed on different locations on the board. The Board Controller is also in charge of controlling the Digital to Analog Converters (DACs) that set the High Voltage Biases.


Figure 2-6: Top View of the PHOS FEC.



Figure 2-7: Block diagram showing the signal path of PHOS, including the trigger generation part.



Figure 2-8: Top: The RCU top view including DCS board and SIU card. The RCU motherboard is in the back with the SIU card (top) and the DCS board (bottom) attached. Bottom: The RCU bottom view where the FPGAs and the connectors to the PCB backplane are located.

A picture of the RCU is shown in Figure 2-8. In the topmost part the three boards comprising the RCU are marked. The SIU [9] is on the top with the optical connector

2.4.3 Readout Control Unit

to the DDL and the DAQ system. The DCS board is in the bottom with the optical link to the TTC system, and the Ethernet connection to the DCS. In the back is the RCU Motherboard.



Figure 2-9: The architecture of the Fee for one readout partition in TPC. From [13].

The tasks of the RCU are twofold. 1) It moves the data from the FECs to the DDL, and 2) it controls the Fee sub-system consisting of the RCU with the belonging FECs. This is illustrated in Figure 2-9 for one TPC readout partition, but it is equally valid for a readout partition in PHOS.

To control the data readout, the RCU distributes two clocks to the FECs, the readout clock and the sampling clock. The readout clock is essentially the LHC clock forwarded via the RCU main FPGA to the FECs, while the sampling clock is generated in the RCU based on the LHC clock, and has a configurable frequency of 2.5 MHz - 10 MHz. The sampling clock is used by the ADCs in the ALTROS to sample the analogue data on the input.

Readout Control Unit Motherboard

The RCU Motherboard hosts the FPGA that implements the readout and control functionality on the RCU (Figure 2-8, bottom). The RCU main FPGA is a Xilinx Virtex-II Pro XC2VP7[15, 16], and it has interfaces to the Gunning Transfer Logic (GTL) drivers that connect to the PCB backplanes, to the DCS board, and to the SIU card. As seen in Figure 2-9, the RCU main FPGA is a vital part of the data-path, and it is in charge of the basic controlling functionality of the Fee.

In addition to the RCU main FPGA, the RCU hosts one additional Flash based FPGA[17] and an 8 MB Flash Memory Device[18] that together implement the RCU

Reconfiguration Network. The configuration files for the RCU main FPGA are stored on the Flash Memory Device and the task of the RCU support FPGA is to configure the RCU main FPGA using these configuration files. This solution is extensively discussed in Chapter 4.

Detector Control System Board

The DCS board⁶ was originally designed for TRD, but because of the flexibility of the board it has been used for several other sub-detectors in ALICE. For TPC and PHOS the DCS board is in use on the RCU (Figure 2-8), but is additionally utilized on several other smaller systems: the BusyBox, the PHOS Trigger-OR, the PHOS led calibration system, and various small controlling systems for TPC (Gating grid, Laser etc.). As seen in Figure 2-8, the DCS board interfaces the higher levels via a 10Mbit/s Ethernet connection. The DCS board is also equipped with an SRAM device, a Flash Memory Device acting as a hard drive, and an Altera Excalibur FPGA with an embedded ARM processor core[19]. These components turn the DCS board into an embedded computer, on which a small tailor made version of Linux is installed. All ALICE sub-detectors that use the RCU as the readout controller use the same system setup of the DCS board. This is based on the TRD version[20], and all the software/firmware that the sub-detectors have in common is inherited from TRD, including the Linux operative system. The Linux is the main cause of the flexibility of the DCS board, making updates and maintenance straightforward to do.

An additional component not highlighted in Figure 2-8 is the small Lattice Complex Programmable Logic Device [21] (CPLD) that is in charge of the clock distribution and voltage regulator enabling. This makes it possible to power down the underlying Motherboard and change the clock frequency of the system clock. This component is not actively interfaced together with the RCU Motherboard since the RCU Motherboard is considered to always be powered on⁷, and the clock frequency of the RCU Motherboard is fixed to the LHC clock frequency.

The Altera Excalibur FPGA is extensively described in [19]. The FPGA consists of two different parts. One part contains predefined modules like the processor core,

⁶ The DCS board is designed and built at the Kirchhoff-institute for Physics, University of Heidelberg. http://www.kip.uniheidelberg.de/ti/DCS-board/current/

⁷ The actual reason for this is a hardware bug on the RCU Motherboard. The DCS board power-on-reset is connected without a diode to the FPGAs and a pull-up on the RCU motherboard. If the DCS board disables the RCU Motherboard voltage regulators, the pull-up will be changed to a pull-down which is strong enough to issue a reset. As a result, the DCS board will be rebooted immadiately if the RCU Motherboard is powered down.

interrupt controller, various interfaces etc. The other part is the Programmable Logic Device (PLD), where the entire user defined logic is implemented. A schematic overview of the different components and how they are connected are found in Figure 2-10. The Excalibur device contains an ARM 922T embedded processor core that communicates to other modules using an AHB bus protocol. The internal communication is divided into two separate bus systems to ensure that the processor activity is unaffected by peripheral and memory activity. The AHB1-2 Bridge handles all transactions from the processor core to the PLD or slaves connected to the AHB2.



Figure 2-10: Schematic overview of the Altera Excalibur FPGA used on the DCS board. From[19].

Some of the key modules for the DCS board in Figure 2-10 are:

- *Dual Port/Single Port SRAM:* Important in several modules, like for instance the RCU Communication Module (section 3.4) and the Ethernet Module.
- *Expansion Bus Interface (EBI)* is used to communicate with the external Flash Memory Device.

- *Universal Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter (UART):* This is very handy for debugging and testing as it provides a possibility to have the Linux command line available via the serial port of a connected PC.
- *Interrupt Controller:* Handles all the interrupts, also the ones coming from the PLD part. One of these interrupts is for instance fired when a FEC has been switched off due to an error situation handled by the RCU.
- *Watchdog Timer:* Resets the whole system, thus providing protection against software failures. On the DCS board it can be used to trigger a reboot of the board based on for instance radiation related errors as the reset of the Watchdog is controlled from software.
- *PLD to Stripe/Stripe to PLD Bridge:* These two bridges do the communication between the user logic in the PLD and the processor core.



2.4.4 PHOS Trigger Generation Hardware

Figure 2-11: Sketch emphasizing one trigger region of PHOS to show the data flow of the trigger detector functionality.

As the PHOS detector is fast enough to be used for L0 and L1a trigger decisions in ALICE. Each FEC in a trigger region submits analogue sums of the input signals to the TRU. These analogue sums are digitized and then processed by the FPGA on the TRU into L0 and L1a triggers. The Trigger-OR board combines triggers from all TRUs, and forwards them to the CTP. See Figure 2-11. The timing requirement for

generating the L0 trigger implies that PHOS must deliver the L0 trigger to the CTP 800 ns after the time of interaction. This includes the extra delay of 200 ns introduced by the cable length of 40 meters from the Trigger-OR to the CTP. The L0 and the L1a trigger is based on 8 analogue sums per FEC, performed on the FEC by fast summing shapers over a 2x2 crystal matrix, before being fed to the TRU.

Trigger Router Unit (TRU)

The present version of the TRU contains a Xilinx Virtex-II Pro FPGA. 14 ADCs digitize the 112 analogue input signals received from the FECs, before entering the FPGA. The triggers are generated in the FPGA by summing up 2x2 analogue sums giving a total area of 4x4 crystals in space, and additionally summing up the analogue input signals in time over a time span of 100 ns. The L0 trigger is issued if the deposited energy given by the space time sum exceeds a programmable threshold between 10 and 230 MeV[22]. Three L1a triggers can be issued if there has been a valid L0 decision. These are based on three different programmable thresholds between 0.5 and 30 GeV. The thresholds are set to separate the events into high p_t , mid p_t and low p_t events, based on the value of transverse momentum of the photon. The TRU is presented in [22] and the firmware solution is discussed in depth in[23].

Trigger-OR

The purpose of the Trigger-OR board is to collect all the L0 and L1a triggers from the 40 TRUs in the PHOS detector. The L0 triggers are ORed through a fast OR gate. The same approach is currently used for the different L1a triggers as well.

The present concept of the TRU analyzing the data, while the Trigger-OR only forwards the triggers to the CTP might be changed in the future. Instead of sending triggers from the TRU, the raw data will be shipped, leaving the data analysis to the Trigger-OR. This opens the possibility to treat the PHOS detector as a whole, not being limited by the boundaries of a trigger region.

2.4.5 BusyBox

One important task of the readout system is to block the CTP from sending triggers if the buffers on the Fee are full and no more triggers can be handled. For all subdetectors using the RCU (TPC, PHOS, FMD and EMCal), the *busy* is generated by the BusyBox. The BusyBox is shown in Figure 2-12 and is a dedicated board that hosts two Xilinx Virtex-4 FPGAs and a DCS board. The sub-detector is considered busy 1) when the buffers on the FEC are full; 2) a trigger sequence is being received from the TTC, or 3) when the TTC system sends a global reset to the Fee. To assert the *busy* line, the BusyBox needs to know what triggers are issued and how many multi event buffers are occupied in the Fee. The CTP will not send any triggers as long as the *busy* signal is asserted by one of the sub-detectors.



Figure 2-12: Picture of the BusyBox with open cover to display the components. The important components are labeled.

The trigger information is acquired by the Fee trigger reception logic (see section 5.2) communicating with the LTU via the TTC receiver chip (TTCrx) on the DCS board. This implies that the same logic is used to decode the trigger sequences as is used in the RCU. For information regarding the status of the buffers, communicating directly with the Fee would be inconvenient because it is located inside the detector in the radiation environment. The solution is to communicate with the D-RORCs which during a data readout operation receive the event-fragments from the Fee. For TPC there are 216 D-RORCs that are connected to the BusyBox via twisted pair LVDS cables. To be able to serve that many connections, add-on boards are needed for the BusyBox that are connected to the BusyBox board via flat cables. These are the connectors as seen in Figure 2-12. FPGA #1 will serve up to 120 LVDS pairs, while FPGA#2 serves the remaining 96. This also implies that for PHOS, a smaller

45

BusyBox with only one FPGA has been designed, that serves the 20 PHOS D-RORCs. The *busy* output is forwarded by the LTU to the CTP, which masks all possible trigger situations until the *busy* is released.

Chapter 3

Detector Control System for the Fee

In this chapter the Detector Control System for the Front-end electronics is described, focusing only on the field layer devices. The DCS is described top down, from the software on the DCS board, via the RCU and down to the Board Controller on the FECs. The work of this thesis is mostly concerned with DCS board firmware and PHOS Board Controller, and these two projects will be given more attention than the other modules of the Fee DCS. Several other motherboards also host the DCS board (for instance BusyBox and PHOS Trigger-OR), and the adaptation done to the DCS board firmware for these boards is discussed. The reconfiguration logic of the RCU Motherboard – which is a vital part of the Fee control system – is given special attention in a separate chapter

3.1 Introduction

Whereas the general DCS architecture is discussed in section 1.6.5, this chapter will only focus on the DCS for the Front-end electronics; more precisely the Field Layer devices. Figure 3-1 shows a schematic of the Fee DCS Field Layer. The Front-end electronics Server (FeeServer) software running on the DCS board interfaces the higher levels, and custom made Linux device drivers communicate with the RCU. In the context of the control system, the RCU main FPGA device handles the monitoring and configuration of the FECs. The FECs both in TPC and PHOS host an SRAM based FPGA: the Board Controller. The Board Controller reads the temperature, voltages and currents from ADCs on the FECs are read by the DCS using the Front-end Control (FC) Bus, where the RCU acts as an abstraction layer. These values are published to the higher levels by the FeeServer, and are displayed to the operator at a PVSS display in the ALICE control room.

If any measured value is violating a predefined threshold, it is of vital importance that the Fee DCS acts immediately. This implies that already at the firmware level, an automatic procedure must be applied to deal with such a situation or else it might lead to permanent damage of the FECs. It is also crucial that all actions taken at the lower levels are reported to the operator at the top. This includes interpreting and combining the status and error registers in the various firmware modules in an overviewable way for the operator.



Figure 3-1: Sketch showing the Field Layer devices for the TPC/PHOS Fee.

Another important issue in the context of the Fee DCS is the handling of radiation related errors. As the Fee are operating in a radiation environment, single event upsets (SEUs) can and will happen in the SRAM based FPGAs that are used throughout the system. The consequence for the RCU can be that the data flow will be interrupted, while an expected consequence for the DCS board is that the Ethernet communication to the higher levels is lost. The problem is partly handled at the RCU Motherboard by the RCU support FPGA that controls the configuration memory of the RCU main FPGA. This supervisory system is recognized as the Reconfiguration Network in Figure 2-8. It is a very important component of the DCS, and this topic will be specially covered in Chapter 4. For the DCS board no such solution exists, therefore it is vital that the DCS board has a possibility to discover that it is failing and reboot itself. Rebooting the DCS board will reconfigure the firmware on the FPGA, escaping from any SEU induced error situations. This also has its side effects. It implies that the DCS board will be offline for the time it takes to reboot, and erasing the contents in the FPGA makes the signals between DCS and RCU float. It

is very important that the status of the DCS board does not inflict on the operation of the RCU, or any other Motherboard that hosts the DCS board.

3.2 DCS Board Software

3.2.1 Communication Software on the DCS board

Each DCS board implements a FeeServer which the higher layer subscribes to as a client using DIM (Distributed Information Management) communication framework⁸. The core of the FeeServer is device independent. It provides general communication functionality, remote control and update of the whole FeeServer application. The core can be used for different devices, i.e. different detectors of the ALICE experiment. The device dependent actions are adapted for each specific device and are executed in separated threads. This makes a controlled execution possible.

The Control Engine implements the device dependent functionality of the FeeServer, which includes methods for initializing and cleaning up the device, as well as command execution and device data access. As the DCS board runs a Linux operating system, the access to the specific hardware is done via Linux device drivers. The use of device drivers to communicate with different parts of the hardware introduces an abstraction layer which decouples software from hardware. Updated firmware modules and device drivers with new functionality can at any time be inserted into the system. This establishes a system that is easy to maintain and can with little effort be modified to meet future demands, despite if the whole detector system is physical unavailable after project startup.

The Control Engine, FeeServer and the DCS architecture in general is extensively discussed in [24]. The DCS board including the Linux operative system is explained in [20].

⁸ http://www.cern.ch/dim

3.2.2 The DCS Board Logical Architecture

DCS board Flash Memory Device Architecture

The 8 MB Flash Memory Device[18] that acts as a hard drive on the DCS board is divided into 4 memory banks where different key content is located:

- Armboot Bootloader and Firmware
- *Bootenv* The boot environment where for instance the board's MAC address is stored.
- *Kernel* The ArmLinux Kernel.
- *DCSrootfs* The root file system of the DCS board.

For the TPC/PHOS version of the DCS board, the Bootenv and Kernel are inherited directly from the TRD version with no changes applied. The Armboot part is naturally updated because of the needed firmware changes, and this is also true for the software part located on the DCSrootfs.

The Root Filesystem

The root file system is formatted in the JFFS2 (Journaling Flash File System 2) type. JFFS2 is writable, fail safe against power loss, compresses data, takes care of wear leveling⁹ and is often chosen for embedded systems.

The regular programs and commands for operating and administrating the UNIX system are provided by BusyBox¹⁰. In addition to them are some programs from other sources, or written by the developers for the detector specific hardware on the board.

There are always two sides to every story which is also true for the level of sophistication that the Linux system provides. It implies that a lot of advanced software is present on a low system level, which again means that there is a higher risk of finding critical software bugs than with a simpler system. The positive side of

⁹"Wear leveling is a technique for prolonging the service life of some kinds of erasable computer storage media, such as flash memory", citation from www.wikipedia.org.

http://www.busybox.net/10

this is that it is possible at any time to remotely correct any bugs found while the experiment is ongoing.

3.3 DCS board Firmware

3.3.1 Overview and Specification



Figure 3-2: System sketch of the DCS board firmware for TPC/PHOS.

As the DCS board was originally developed to be used for the TRD detector [20], the features that are common between the two projects are inherited from the TRD development. This is in practice the following interfaces:

- The Ethernet Device interface
- The TTCrx I²C control interface
- The interface to the Lattice CPLD for clock distribution and Voltage Regulator controller functionality.
- The I²C interface to the ADC for monitoring purposes.

• Neighbor Board Control. This is a special JTAG interface that enables a DCS board to communicate with its neighboring DCS boards for increased robustness. This feature was decided not to be used for TPC and PHOS, but the interface has not been removed in case it is found useful in the future.

All of these interfaces are important for the functionality of the DCS board, but are not discussed any further in this text. More information on this can be found in [20]. The only TPC/PHOS specific add-on done to the firmware of the DCS board is the communication towards the Motherboard that hosts the DCS board.

The communication to the registers in both FPGAs on the RCU Motherboard as well as a few internal registers on the DCS board is done with the RCU Communication Module (See Figure 3-2). The RCU Communication Module needs to be able to fulfill the following requirements:

- It must support a variety of Motherboards that host the DCS board.
- Together with the RCU support FPGA (Chapter 4) it must control the RCU Flash Memory Device, the RCU main FPGAs configuration interface as well as normal register access.
- It must not become the bottleneck of the system, especially while transferring large amount of data during configuration.

The RCU Communication Module and the other modules in the DCS board firmware have a designated address space of the ARM CPU, giving the Linux system access to available registers and memories by the use of device drivers (Table D-2).

3.3.2 DCS board Flavours

In addition to the RCU, the DCS board is used on several other motherboards. Special firmware versions that are based on the RCU version are designed for the PHOS Trigger-OR board and the BusyBox. In both of these cases the increased configurability and easy access to the firmware modules have been the main reasons for choosing this solution.

The firmware described in this section has originally been designed for the RCU, so this will be the focus of the text. The adaptations done for BusyBox and Trigger-OR will be described in section 3.4.11.

3.4 RCU Communication Module

3.4.1 Overview



Figure 3-3: Schematic of the RCU Communication Module. The Flash interface and the Memory Mapped interface are using the instruction (M1) and result (M2) memories. The selectMAP interface is directly controlled by the Linux Driver.

The RCU Communication Module (Figure 3-3) can be viewed as the glue between the RCU and the embedded processor. The main modules are: 1) the MessageBuffer¹¹, which is a memory mapped interface and by far the biggest part of the design, and 2) the direct selectMAP interface. The MessageBuffer part makes use of two 32 bit wide memories on the PLD, one memory acts as an Instruction Memory (M1), while the other is a Result Memory (M2). In the Instruction Memory, the

¹¹ The original TPC/PHOS DCS board firmware was designed at the University of Bergen by Torsten Alt. The then existing version of the RCU Motherboard had only one Altera FPGA as the main FPGA, and it was planned to implement a JTAG interface on the DCS board to configure this FPGA, but the results from the irradiation tests proved that this FPGA was not suited and the present solution was developed.

kernel device driver writes predefined blocks of data/instruction that on execution return status and data in the Result Memory. This increases the robustness of the communication protocol by adding an abstraction layer between software and the low level register interface. The direct selectMAP interface is not making use of any memories, but is directly controlled from a Linux device driver. The direct selectMAP mode must be actively enabled by software prior to being accessed.

The RCU Communication Module is controlled by the Command Status (ComStat) Register (Table D-3). Transactions are initiated by writing to this memory location, and a busy status can be read when the given command is being executed. Two bits are considered as asynchronous resets on two levels. One is for the DCS board firmware and the underlying Motherboard, while the other is for the DCS board firmware only. It is also possible to disable all outputs that are routed to the DCS-RCU connector to avoid stray currents in case the underlying board is powered down. The modes of operation as described in next section are also set by two bits in the ComStat register.

3.4.2 Modes of Operation

Historically the RCU Communication Module only consisted of the MessageBuffer (minus the Flash interface), but as the Reconfiguration Network on the RCU Motherboard was designed, two new ways of using the control and data lines were introduced. In addition to the normal communication path the RCU Flash interface and the selectMAP interface to the RCU main FPGA were added. There are several reasons for having these two interfaces on the DCS board.

- *Speed.* Using the default normal operation mode to communicate with the Flash Memory Device or the selectMAP interface is not very efficient as it will add another and not useful layer of abstraction in the communication chain. Simply moving the Flash interface and the selectMAP interface to the DCS board, using the RCU support FPGA as a route through firmware is more efficient.
- *Space*. The RCU support FPGA has limited capacity, so to be able to fit in all the needed functionality, the modules that are not needed in the RCU support FPGA are moved.

Robustness. The RCU support FPGA is difficult to update after installation¹², so correcting potential bugs are difficult. Moving firmware modules to the DCS board ensures that communication paths to the selectMAP interface and the Flash Memory Device will always be available.

The RCU Communication Module supports three communication modes: normal operation mode, direct selectMAP mode and Flash mode as shown in Figure 3-4. The normal operation mode is used to communicate with the registers in the firmware of the FPGAs on the RCU Motherboard, as well as the internal registers in the DCS firmware. The direct selectMAP mode is for communicating with the configuration interface of the Xilinx Virtex-II Pro. The purpose of the Flash mode is to communicate with the Flash Memory Device of the RCU. The two latter modes use the RCU support FPGA as a tunnel to the different interfaces.



Figure 3-4: Sketch showing a logical view of the three modes of operation: From left to right: Flash mode, selectMAP mode and normal operation mode.

The RCU support FPGA has a full selectMAP interface of its own, so in the case of the RCU the selectMAP interface on the DCS board is added for redundancy and increased configurability. The Trigger-OR and the BusyBox do not have a support FPGA, so for these devices it is strictly necessary to include it. The implementation of the actual bus protocol is done in software instead of firmware since the speed of the interface is not an issue.

¹² Physical access is needed to update the RCU Support FPGA. This means that the ALICE detector must be dismantled to access the JTAG connector on the RCU Motherboard. In other words – such a situation is not desired.

3.4.3 Definition of the interconnecting DCS-RCU bus lines

The three modes of operation imply that the interconnecting bus lines between DCS and RCU are defined differently depending on the mode selected. The modes are not used on any other motherboard than the RCU. The definition of the bus lines is given in Table D-5. There are four lines that are valid in all modes; the interrupt line, the reset line, and the 2 lines used for setting the mode. The interrupt line is signaling if a critical situation has occurred on one of the FECs; a situation that needs immediate attention from the higher level of software. The value of the mode select lines for the different modes has been selected so that rebooting of the DCS board will not inflict on the operation of the RCU. The modes are defined like¹³:

- "11" normal operation mode
- "10" selectMAP mode
- "01" Flash mode
- "00" Normal operation compatibility mode

The default mode has been set to "11" since the mode lines have pull ups on them. This will ensure that the mode for the RCU does not change when the DCS board does not actively drive the lines, for instance during reboot. Support for "00" is added for backward compatibility. It is important that the other modes are not selected by chance, so they are chosen to be "01" and "10", since it is unlikely that the mode lines should be unequal to each other if not actively driven.

3.4.4 RCU Interrupt Handling

One of the control lines between the RCU and the DCS is the interrupt line. This interrupt is forwarded directly into one of the available interrupt inputs of the ARM core. As there is an external pull up on the interrupt line, the interrupt is active low. Handling of the interrupt in software has not yet been integrated in the system, but essentially the Linux driver that handles the interrupt should acknowledge this by writing to a designated register in the RCU, which will then release the interrupt line.

¹³ These mode settings do not match exactly what is defined in the ComStat register in Table D-3. The reason for this is that the modes were set differently in earlier versions of the RCU communication module firmware, and to affect as little as possible of existing software, the mode definitions are kept equal in the upper layer, while they are recoded in the RCU communication module.

What the higher level of software then decides to do when the interrupt is received depends on the severity of the error situation, as discussed in depth in [13].

3.4.5 MessageBuffer Functional Overview

The core module of the MessageBuffer is the RCU Configuration Controller. This finite state machine decodes the data in the Instruction Memory. Upon execution of the sequence, data and commands are sent to the RCU Master interface or the RCU Flash interface.

To make use of the whole width of the Instruction Memory, a possibility to compress the data from software to the Instruction Memory is added. This means that the 32 bits that are written to the Instruction Memory can be interpreted by the RCU Configuration Controller as 2 x 16 bits, 3 x 10 bits or 4 x 8 bits. The same can be done the other way around back to the Result Memory. This option is designed since the pedestal memory of the ALTRO is a 1k x 10 bit wide memory block, and writing using 3x10 bit compression will write the pedestal data in almost 1/3 of the time opposed to doing single transactions per 10 bit word¹⁴.

An RCU Slave Module is included to communicate with internal registers. The internal registers are listed in Table D-1. The *SM_Enable* register is used by the BusyBox and Trigger-OR flavour of the DCS board (section 3.4.11) only. The *set_old_mode* is only used by the RCU flavour and is implemented for backward compatibility. The remaining registers are used by both. The three flavours of firmware can be divided by the firmware version register. RCU flavour is numbered 2.x; the Trigger-OR flavour 2.x1, while the BusyBox flavour is numbered 2.x2 and 2.x3, where x is the version number. Even though the RCU Slave is connected prior to the Mode Select Module as seen in Figure 3-3, the RCU Communication Module still has to be in normal operation mode to be able to communicate with it.

3.4.6 MessageBuffer Configuration Block

When communicating either in normal operation mode or in Flash mode, a block of data with a predefined format is written to the Instruction Memory. The format is

¹⁴ This was true for the different sub-versions of RCU fw v1.0. For RCU fw v2.0 this option has been removed, making the compress algorithm less useful.

given in Table D-6. On command from software these blocks are decoded by the RCU Configuration Controller.

The information given in the header of the data block is used by the MessageBuffer to decode the message. The Version id is only in use by the driver and not read by the firmware at all. The *Control bits* are used to set if the following data block is for the Flash interface or the RCU master interface, as well as setting the compression of the data. The *Block Number* is the number of the current sequence block. The first block has number n-1, the block number is decremented for the following blocks. The last block has block number 0. If there is only one sequence block, the block number bits are just zero. The Number of Words are the total number of words within one block, not including header or end block marker. The Command id gives the command to execute. The commands are divided into a single transaction in one block or multiple transactions in one block. The great advantage of the latter is that the overhead is significantly reduced since only one header and one footer word are needed for a large amount of data. Additionally, firmware (instead of software) is responsible for controlling the actual transactions. The result of this is that the speed of the transactions is significantly increased. As both the Flash mode and normal operation mode uses the MessageBuffer, a special set of command for Flash mode is defined. All available commands are listed in Table D-8.

The format for the data block returned in the result memory is given in Table D-7. After a transaction has been executed by the RCU Communication Module, the software can read this buffer for status information and returned data.



3.4.7 DCS Bus Protocol

Figure 3-5: DCS bus protocol. First 0xDEADBEEF is written to register 0x7000, and then it is read back afterward (From simulation).

The DCS bus is an asynchronous bus with full handshake, of which the DCS board acts as bus master. On command from the Configuration Controller, the common strobe is driven low and then the bus master waits for the acknowledge from the slaves connected. Timeout is reported if no acknowledge has been received within a specified time of 32 clks. If a valid acknowledge is received or the transaction has

timed out, the master returns to idle. An example of a write and read transaction is given in Figure 3-5.

As the RCU Motherboard and the DCS board are using the same system clock, and the wire length between the DCS board FPGA and the RCU FPGAs is only a few centimetres, having an asynchronous bus protocol is not mandatory. It is not a very fast protocol as it takes at least 6 clks from the strobe is asserted until it is deasserted. On the other hand it is a fail safe protocol, and this is the reason why it at some point in time was chosen. It has not been evaluated to be changed later on, since changing the interface would involve changes of the slaves of all the Motherboard that hosts the DCS board. Additionally, software gives a much larger contribution to the actual transaction time than what the implementation of the bus protocol does.

3.4.8 Flash Bus Protocol



Figure 3-6: Write sequence for the RCU Flash interface. The first part is writing the sequence of commands; the second part is the status polling. The erase sequences are equal to the write sequence except for a different command sequence (From simulation).

The Flash Interface Module is used to interface the RCU Flash Memory Device [18]. For the software it seems as if the RCU Flash Memory Device is operated in word mode, but because of the restriction in the number of lines going from the DCS board to the RCU Motherboard, the Flash Interface Module splits each 16 bit word into two bytes that it writes sequentially when writing and vice versa for reading. It has been designed like this for consistency as the RCU support FPGA operates the Flash Memory Device in word mode. The Flash Interface Module supports the following subset of commands as specified in [18]: Read, Write, Erase all, Erase sector, Flash reset and Flash Read ID.

A read operation is simple. It is just to set up the address and then the data are ready after approximately 90 ns. A reset is made by asserting the reset line and then wait for 10 μ s. The most complicated operations are writing and erasing (see Figure 3-6). These operations demand that a certain sequence of commands is written before

starting to continuously poll the Flash Memory Device, waiting for the Flash Memory Device to report whether the transaction is successful or not. As the control and data signals are routed through the RCU support FPGA on the RCU Motherboard, the timing of the Flash communication is more relaxed than what is specified in [18]. Additionally, the speed of the Flash bus protocol is not an issue, since updating the Flash will only be needed if a new firmware version for the RCU main FPGA is released.

3.4.9 SelectMAP Bus Protocol

On the DCS board, the selectMAP bus is managed directly from the Linux selectMAP device driver. The device driver interfaces dedicated input and output data memory addresses, as well as the selectMAP bus control lines (see Table D-4). The selectMAP bus protocol is defined by Xilinx. A short overview is given in 4.3.3, and more information is found in [16], chapter 4 and [15], module 2 for the Virtex-II Pro device. What can be mentioned is that the Virtex-4 and the Virtex-II Pro has a minor variation when it comes to the protocol for reading. The Virtex-4 is used on the Trigger-OR and the BusyBox. When reading a given register that can be addressed by the selectMAP protocol, a header containing address information needs to be written first. Then the bus direction should be reverted from writing to reading and, by toggling the *cclk*, the *busy* line should signal when data is ready. The Virtex-II selectMAP interface gives valid data at the same edge of *cclk* as *busy* goes low, while the Virtex-4 selectMAP interface gives valid data on the next rising edge of *cclk*. This means that the Linux driver that does the actual communication has to handle both ways of reading depending on which type of FPGAs is on the board. The driver and accompanying software for the selectMAP interface is covered in [25].

3.4.10 Radiation Tolerance Measures

The probability that the DCS board will fail due to radiation related errors is not higher than 1 functional error per hour on all the 216 DCS boards in the TPC [7]. The DCS board is not part of the data flow so it is not considered mandatory to keep the DCS board from failing, as long as it is possible to return to a healthy system status. This implies that making the firmware in a way that increases the radiation tolerance of the FPGA has not been highly prioritised. Because of this, the most important measures that are done have been to detach the logic of the DCS board from the logic of the RCU Motherboard as much as possible. For instance, the handling of the incoming triggers has been moved to the RCU Motherboard, and the only

responsibility of the DCS board is to configure the TTCrx ASIC device. Additionally, it has been extensively tested that rebooting the DCS board will not have any effect on the RCU Motherboard, especially concerning the reconfiguration of the RCU main FPGA.

Besides building the firmware with one-hot, safe state machines, the ComStat register is made more robust by using Triple Modular Redundancy (TMR) [26] and voting techniques (without feedback). This precaution is taken since this register has the global reset and the mode selection setting that would directly inflict with the RCU Motherboard in case of an error. Ideally, hamming encoding with feedback would be better suited for this register since then an error could be corrected when seen, but since this would involve changes also to overlying software, and since the ComStat register is overwritten on each transaction, TMR was chosen as an acceptable compromise. The reset and the mode lines are fed to an 8 bit long shift register and the actual reset signal is generated from a logical AND of all the shift register outputs. This is done to avoid radiation related glitches or temporary bitflips to reset the system or change the mode of operation.

3.4.11 BusyBox and Trigger-OR Flavour

This section describes the modifications done to make the DCS board fit the Trigger-OR and BusyBox. From the DCS board point of view, there are two physical differences:

- The RCU bus data width is reduced from 32 to 16 bits
- There are dedicated lines for a selectMAP interface.

Additionally the TTCrx ready line is forwarded to the BusyBox Motherboard to participate busy decision.

The DCS board firmware for the Trigger-OR and the BusyBox is equal except for the pinning on the DCS-RCU connector¹⁵ and the TTCrx ready signal forwarding. An external module is added to enable the selectMAP bus. The enable signal is set by memory mapped register in the RCU Communication Module. This register is the only additional feature needed in the RCU Communication Module. The reason why this is needed is that the default value of all the registers in the Altera FPGA is 0, and

¹⁵ For ease, the same naming convention is used for this connector even though it interfaces Trigger-OR and BusyBox.

at the same time the selectMAP bus has negative polarity on all control signals. This means that if the DCS board reboots during operation, the selectMAP bus lines will be driven low, and then the Xilinx FPGA on the Motherboard will be erased. Using the RCU selectMAP mode definition was considered, but turned down since it would then be impossible to use selectMAP communication and memory mapped communication in parallel. For the Trigger-OR this is essential as it will make it possible for the DCS board to execute the Active Partial Reconfiguration of the Trigger-OR FPGA while the system is running. Active Partial Reconfiguration is discussed in Chapter 4.



Trigger Or / Trigger Busy Logic board

Figure 3-7: Sketch showing the modification done for the Trigger-OR / BusyBox.

The TTCrx ready signal is added for the BusyBox since each sub-detector should report busy if this is not asserted. If the TTCrx ready is not asserted, it implies that either there is a physical problem with the connection to the LTU, or that the CTP is issuing a global reset via the TTCrx. Since the only connection problem that can detected is on the link between the LTU and the BusyBox, it is the latter case that is the most interesting for TPC, PHOS and the other sub-detectors using RCUs and the BusyBox.

For ease, all the rest of the logic in the RCU Communication Module is untouched. This implies that the mode selection and the Flash interface, which is very important for the RCU Motherboard, are still included. A possible future modification of the DCS board firmware would be to add the possibility to add/remove these features at compile time, controlled by VHDL generics.

3.5 RCU main FPGA in the Fee DCS



3.5.1 Introduction

Figure 3-8: The RCU main FPGA firmware. The Control Node is seen on the left, while the Readout Node is to the right.

The two main objectives of the RCU main FPGA firmware¹⁶ are to perform the data readout operation (see Chapter 5), and configure and monitor the Fee. The latter makes the RCU main FPGA a vital part of the Fee DCS. As seen in Figure 3-8 the firmware is split into two nodes depending on the task: the Control Node (left) and the Readout Node (right). The Control Node monitors temperatures, voltages and currents on the FECs and act upon threshold violations. The Readout Node configures the FECs via the Instruction Sequencer, the Result Unit and the ALTRO interface, and most importantly performs the readout operation.

The Monitoring and Safety Module is the main module in the Control Node. As it is important that the readout process and the monitoring process do not affect each other, the Monitoring and Safety Module is controlled by the DCS board only. This is done by the DCS interface implementing two internal bus systems: 1) the RCU bus, of which it shares the role as bus master with the SIU interface, and 2) a separate internal bus system for the Control Node.

The Instruction Sequencer and the Result Unit are not considered part of the Control Node as these modules are connected to the internal RCU bus, and are therefore shared between the two bus masters. This also enables the DAQ system to configure the FECs and for TPC this is the preferred solution. This section will only be concerned with the Control Node.

3.5.2 DCS Interface

Introduction

The DCS interface (Figure 3-9) is needed on the RCU main FPGA to have a single interface towards the DCS bus master on the DCS board, and to the wrap the asynchronous bus protocol to the internal synchronous bus structure. The DCS interface supports the different modes of which the DCS board communicates with the RCU Motherboard, by responding and driving the bus lines only in normal operation mode. The DCS interface will always acknowledge a transaction as long as it is within the memory space of the RCU main FPGA, and bus access is granted.

¹⁶ Except for the DCS interface, the Trigger Receiver Module, and the SIU interface, the RCU main FPGA firmware is developed by the Electronics Department at CERN (http://ep-ed-alice-tpc.web.cern.ch/). The SIU interface is designed by the ALICE DAQ group at CERN (http://ph-dep-aid.web.cern.ch/ph-dep-aid/). The DCS interface and the Trigger Receiver Module is work that is the basis of this thesis.

This implies that if the address belongs to the RCU support FPGA or the DCS board firmware, the DCS interface will be silent.



Figure 3-9: Simplified Sketch of the DCS interface.

For the registers that are shared between the two bus masters of the RCU, the DCS and the SIU, the DCS interface makes use of a bus request/grant scheme. The bus request is handled by an arbiter. If the bus is not granted by the arbiter within a timeout period of 32 clks, the DCS interface will not acknowledge the transaction to the DCS board, and the transaction will time out on the DCS board side. It is possible to check who the owner of the bus is by reading a designated register in the DCS interface Slave Module, where both the bus grant signals are stored. If the SIU has the ownership, and the DCS board would need it, writing to a given register address in the internal slave will interrupt the ongoing operation on the bus and remove the bus grant for the SIU. There are registers in the RCU main FPGA that do not need the bus request/grant scheme, since the SIU does not have any access to them. These are the internal registers in the DCS interface and the registers in the Monitoring and Safety Module.

As the FPGA do not have internal tristate buffers, the internal RCU bus protocol has one data out bus with three write enable signals depending on whether the data is to be received by the arbiter, the Monitoring and Safety Module or the internal logic. For the same reason there are three data input buses to the Synchronizer and Wrapper process. The dedicated interrupt line from the FECs is routed to the DCS board, and as no masking on this line is needed it is not routed via the DCS interface.

Reset Strategy

The DCS interface is also in charge of generating the resets from the DCS. The asynchronous reset line from the DCS board will be sent further as a global reset to internal logic. The global reset will reset both the FECs and the RCU main FPGA, while the fec_reset and the rcu_reset with reset either one. The fec_reset and the rcu_reset are soft resets, meaning that they only reset the status of the firmware and not the configuration of it. These resets are generated by writing any value to three predefined register addresses, and they are sent to a reset handling module that will prolong the reset pulses if needed (for instance for the fec_reset), and or them with the resets coming from the SIU that has the exact same reset strategy. The DCS interface itself can be reset by either the asynchronous reset from the DCS board or from the reset issued by the SIU. In this way it is always possible to reset the RCU FPGA, if needed, from both interfaces. All available registers in the DCS interface are listed in Table D-9.

3.5.3 Monitoring and Safety Module

Overview

The Monitoring and Safety Module is extensively described in [13]. It does three main tasks: 1) It is the I²C master towards the slaves on the Board Controller on the FECs, 2) it is in charge of the monitoring tasks, and 3) it is doing the low level and fast handling of the interrupts coming from the slaves. These three features are divided into an I²C Master interface, a Monitoring Module and Safety Module respectively. The DCS will continuously monitor the ADC values for all FECs during a run. These values will be available for the system operator in as a PVSS panel. A PVSS panel for temperature monitoring in TPC is shown in Figure 3-10, where half of the TPC A-side is powered. This is showing the TPC readout partitions and the green color means that the temperatures in all the FECs connected to the RCU in the readout partition are reported to be fine. It is possible to select each readout partition to get detailed information if needed[27].



Figure 3-10: PVSS panel for temperature monitoring in the TPC. (by ALICE TPC DCS group - C. Lippmann¹⁷)

Interrupt handling

When an interrupt has been flagged by one of the connected FECs, the control status register of each card of the respective branch is polled by the RCU to find which FEC has issued the interrupt. This information is stored in a status memory. The interrupt line is directly connected to the interrupt controller of the ARM CPU on the DCS board to enable quick response from software. Depending on the severity of the interrupt, the card is either switched off by the Safety Module, for instance when an over threshold temperature reading has been done, or it is up to the higher level DCS to investigate the error further. This is defined to be a hard and a soft error respectively.

¹⁷ Christian Lippman: Christian.Lippmann@cern.ch

3.6 PHOS FEC Board Controller

3.6.1 Introduction and Requirements

For both TPC and PHOS the Board Controller handles the low level monitoring and controlling tasks on the FECs. It makes the status of the FEC available via software, and together with the RCU quickly responds to any error situation that might occur.

There are two buses enabling communication between the RCU and the Board Controller; the ALTRO bus and the Front-end Control (FC) bus. The ALTRO bus is a 40 bit parallel bus that is shared between the ALTROs and the Board Controller on the FEC, and is used for configuration and data readout, while the FC bus is a modified I²C protocol that is used for monitoring.

The Board Controller should be able to do the following:

- Monitor the health status of the board reading current levels, voltage levels and temperatures on the FEC.
- Implement slaves for both bus protocols.
- Notify the RCU via a dedicated interrupt line if any monitored values violate a configurable threshold.
- Control the ALTRO bus signals and the GTL drivers used in the communication network with the RCU. This should be done both in register transaction mode and data readout mode of the ALTRO bus.
- Enable the sparse readout functionality of the FEC, i.e. enable the RCU to read only channels where data have been buffered.
- Configure the DACs that set the High Voltage Bias to the APDs. (Only PHOS).

The concept of the PHOS Board Controller is based on the TPC Board Controller, adding extra functionality needed for PHOS and removing some other features not needed. Additionally it was discovered that some design choices of the TPC Board Controller were not ideal. The FC bus slave was implemented in a way that external errors easily could make it freeze so that the complete FC bus would be blocked. In general, the TPC Board Controller is not implemented considering the radiation environment the circuit is supposed to operate in, for instance are the registers not implemented with mitigation techniques to secure them against single event effects.

Additionally, the design is not easily scalable since it was not foreseen that the TPC Board Controller should be reused for other sub-detectors. One of the reasons for the lack of scalability is that no memories are used in the design, and the addressing scheme of the registers is inappropriate when redesigning for instance for PHOS that has three sensor ADCs instead of one. Because of this, major changes are done to the TPC implementation to make it suitable for PHOS and to make it more robust.

3.6.2 TPC Board Controller

The TPC Board Controller is extensively described in [13], but since the TPC Board Controller is an important module in the Fee DCS for TPC and the design is the base for the PHOS Board Controller, this section is dedicated to a short description of it. The core functionality of the TPC Board Controller is to monitor the health of the board, control the GTL drivers, and enable sparse readout and ALTRO testmode. The PHOS Board Controller has inherited all features except for the latter. The sparse readout and ALTRO testmode will be covered in section 5.4.2 as this is part of the data readout functionality.

Health Monitoring

The main task of the Board controller is to monitor the health of the board. On the TPC FEC hosts an ADC (Analog Devices AD7417[28]) that has a 10 bit temperature sensor and 4 single channels analogue to digital converters. Two channels are connected directly to the supply voltages on the FEC, while the two other inputs are connected behind a resistor network so that the current drawn on the given supply voltages can be calculated. The Board Controller communicates with the ADC using an I²C bus protocol, and the I²C Master on the Board Controller can be configured to read these values continuously or on command from the RCU.

Error Condition Signalling

The read back values are compared to a programmable threshold for each value. If the read back values exceed these thresholds an interrupt signal will be issued to the RCU Motherboard. There is one threshold for each value in the TPC Board Controller. The currents and the temperature have a threshold giving a high limit, while the thresholds of the voltages are given with a low limit. These thresholds give two levels of severity that both flags an interrupt to the RCU. If the thresholds of the temperature or current are exceeded, the RCU will immediately power off the board. As there is only one single shared interrupt line between all boards on a FEC, the RCU will need to poll every single board on the branch that signalled the interrupt to find the source. In addition to the threshold violations, errors with the power regulators and clocks will generate interrupts.

Board Controller Glue Logic

One part of the Board Controller consists of glue logic. The glue logic controls all signals driven on the bus as well as the GTL drivers. As the ALTRO bus is bidirectional, the direction of the GTL drivers for the ALTRO bus is controlled by this logic, both for Board Controller and ALTRO transactions. It is also possible to isolate the board, i.e. controlling the GTL drivers in such a way that the RCU can not interfere with the internal ALTRO bus on the FEC. This is used for instance during testmode and sparse readout, where the Board Controller becomes the bus master and is able to address each ALTRO on the board to read/write to the internal registers.

3.6.3 PHOS Board Controller Introduction

Overview

Even if the PHOS FEC and the TPC FEC have many similarities, the two boards differ in layout and functionality as seen in section 2.4.1 and section 2.4.2. The vital changes seen from the perspective of the Board Controller are the inclusion of four DACs with eight channels each for the High Voltage Bias settings, there are four ALTROs instead of eight, three ADCs for health monitoring as opposed to one and an USB interface device to the Board Controller is included. As the USB device was added only for functional test of the FEC during production and is not to be used in the final system, implementing an interface to the USB controller is not prioritized.

The basis for the code is the FMD Digitizer which essentially is the TPC design ported to VHDL¹⁸ with some FMD specific add-ons. For PHOS the design is made flatter and the components that are not needed for the PHOS FEC are removed. This included all FMD specific components and the ALTRO Testmode Module (section 5.4.2). The latter was removed since the purpose of the ALTRO test mode is to monitor the ADC inputs of the ALTRO, which is a feature that is most useful during hardware development[29]. When the PHOS Board Controller was designed, the

¹⁸ The FMD Digitizer is written by Christian Holm Christensen at the University of Copenhagen. More information: http://fmd.nbi.dk/

FEC was already finished, making the resources used by the test mode implementation better utilized with other features. The rest of the modules are kept, but, as already stated in section 3.6.1, needed redesign.



Figure 3-11: Simplified sketch of the Board Controller.

A sketch of the top level is given in Figure 3-11 that shows all the sub modules of the PHOS Board Controller. The different sub modules implement different tasks. The *Drivers* module is the glue logic that controls the GTL drivers and the signals on the ALTRO bus and FC bus. The *ALTRO Switch Mask In* does a combinatorial masking of ALTRO bus input signals and internal mask bits. It will for instance mask out fake error conditions reported by the voltage regulators when they are disabled on purpose. The sparse readout functionality is implemented by the *EventLength Manager*, and the purpose of this module is to scan the Event Length register of each ALTRO channel to verify if it contains data. The *ALTRO interface* decodes the information coming on the ALTRO bus. It verifies if the transaction is meant for the

actual slave and acts accordingly. The *Slow Control Slave* is the FC bus slave, which is a modified I²C interface that decodes information coming on the FC bus. The *Interface Decoder* is a fairly advanced module in the Board Controller for TPC and is used to decode commands and set error bits when an unknown address is recognized. For PHOS, this has been reduced to a simple multiplexer between the interfaces that reports an error if the two interfaces are trying to access the registers at the same time. The heart of the Board Controller design is the *Registers* module. All the memories and registers are placed here, as well as the logic for identifying threshold violations in the ADC values. The ADC values are read by the *ADC interface*, which implements an I²C bus master towards the ADCs. The High Voltage Bias is set by DACs that are interfaced by the serial *DAC interface*.

In addition to the DAC interface, the main functional changes opposed to TPC are that all monitored values are optionally verified against high and low threshold settings that are stored in designated memories. It is also possible to set a configurable value from 1 - 3 of how many times a given value should violate the threshold before it fires an interrupt. This is done so that possible transaction errors in the ADC interface will not affect the complete FEC. The FC bus interface is made more robust against external errors and all memories and registers that hold relatively static information have increased radiation tolerance by the use of various mitigation techniques.

3.6.4 Registers

The Registers Module of the Board Controller (see Figure 3-12) implements most of the core functionality. It consists of a Register Block, a Health Status Module and three counters. The sampling clock counter counts the sampling clock to calculate the ratio between the system clock and the sampling clock, and two additional counters count the L0 and L2a triggers received. The trigger counters can be used to verify that the actual FEC is in synch with the RCU and the other FECs in the same subsystem.

The Register Block maps all register and memory addresses in the Board Controller. The address mapping is given in Table D-10, and is defined like this for a purpose. All the registers that are equal to the TPC Board Controller have inherited the address location from TPC while the PHOS specific registers have been moved outside of the address space of TPC. The reason for doing this is to make it possible to reuse more of the DCS software for TPC, while securing that reading/writing to illegal addresses in PHOS does not give any unwanted behaviour. In addition, the use of memories
makes it more economic to place for instance all the temperature, voltage and current values within the same address area. All memories (DAC value memory, ADC value memory, ADC threshold memories) are set up with two masters: the external interface to the RCU and the interface to the internal modules using the memories. The external interface has priority, and the internal modules must wait for the external transaction to finish before resuming any ongoing operation.



Figure 3-12: Block schematic of the Registers Module.

The definition of the Control/Status Registers (CSR) of the Board Controller can be seen in Table D-10. These registers are used to configure the Board Controller and enable a first level status check. If the status shows that something is not as expected, other registers exist with more detailed information, for instance concerning hamming errors etc. The CSR0 and the CSR1 registers are highly important since they are polled by the RCU in case of an interrupt. The CSR1 register holds the status of all the interrupt sources on a FEC, while the CSR0 is a mask register for CSR1 that tells the RCU which error conditions should trigger an interrupt. The other interrupt sources besides the monitored values are the error lines from the voltage regulators, and the status of the sampling clock compared to the system clock. As the two clocks are dependent on each other they should have an expected ratio between them. If not, it indicates a problem with the clock distribution on the FEC. The threshold violations reported in CSR1 is a combination of various violations that are reported by the Health Status Module. All the threshold violations are additionally reported individually in a separate register. The CSR2 register enables the power regulators for the different parts of the board and also the clocks to the ALTROs and the DACs. An additional feature that has been added in the PHOS Board Controller is hamming encoding of the memories for storing ADC threshold values and DAC settings. In CSR2 it is possible to enable this, since this is per default disabled for backward compatibility. The format and location of the CSR0 and CSR1 are kept strictly to TPC convention since this is expected by the RCU.

3.6.5 Health Monitoring



Figure 3-13: The Monitoring ADC is interfaced to the Board Controller with a standard l^2C protocol. To the left is a principle drawing of the voltage measurements done by the ADC.

| Address | Location on FEC |
|---------|-------------------------------------|
| "000" | Top: Between ALTRO 0 and ALTRO 2 |
| "001" | Top: Power Regulator Area |
| "010" | Bottom: Between ALTRO 3 and ALTRO 4 |
| " | 000" 001" 010" |

Table 3-1: ADCs used for monitoring in PHOS Fee

There are three ADCs of type Analog Devices AD7417 [28] placed in different areas on the board (see Table 3-1 and Figure 3-13), and these are controlled using a standard I^2C bus protocol. The AD7417 has 4 single channel ADCs and a temperature monitor inside. In PHOS these are used for reading out altogether 6 different voltage levels with accompanied current consumption in addition to the temperatures on three different locations on the board. This gives altogether 15 values that are monitored.

The values that are monitored are explained in Figure 3-13, that show a principle drawing on how voltage and current is monitored. Basically, the voltages on input ADC1 and ADC3 are the actual voltage level, only downscaled by resistor R1 to match the input range of the ADC. The ADC2 and ADC4 are used as reference voltages to calculate the current, by using Ohms Law over resistor R6. This resistor is

so small compared to the others that the current flow in the others is negligible. Again resistor R2 is used for downscaling. The conversion factors given in Table D-13 are calculated based on these resistor values. ADC IC15 that measures the -6.0V, has an offset of 8.2V in the measured value since a Zener Diode with a voltage drop of 8.2V [30] is included in the resistor network.

All the instructions for reading/writing are placed in a ROM. If the sequencer is told to start conversion, the ADC channels are read one by one, until all 15 values from the ADCs are put into the ADC Value Memory. The AD4717 is able to do verification of the temperature against a programmable threshold and set an over-temperature flag. This feature is not used on the FEC since testing on voltage and current thresholds are also required. For consistency all threshold verification are done internally in the Board Controller.

Table D-13 shows the ADC Value Memory where the values are grouped after ADC, as given in Table 3-1. An ADC reading can run continuously – which is normal operation mode – or start on a command given by the RCU. Whenever a new ADC value is received from the ADC interface, the value is tested against the high and low threshold, given in the threshold memories (Table D-11 and Table D-12). Prior to the value being written to memory, the Health Status Module looks up two configuration registers, the ADC difference and the ADC difference direction. The first register decides if the value stored should be the difference between the previous value and the actual value, while the second register sets the sign of the difference. These settings are needed for calculating the current while at the same time trying to keep the design as generic as possible and give increased debug possibilities. The memories for the high and low thresholds have the same architecture as the memories for the values, except that these memories are hamming coded. If a single hamming error is found when reading these memories, the value in the memory is corrected. A double error is reported in the hamming error register. The ADC value memory is not hamming coded since it is updated frequently and since the threshold test is done on the input value of the memory, not on the memory value itself. The ADC threshold memories and the ADC value memory have the same addressing scheme, implying that there is a one to one correspondence between the values in a given sub address. If a location of the threshold memory has a zero value, it means that the threshold is undefined, and no check will be done.

If a threshold violation has occurred, an error counter is counted up for the given ADC value. If this counter reaches a configurable value from 1 to 3, an interrupt is issued. For backward compatibility, the default value of this limit is set to 1. This is

implemented so that the interrupt will not be fired when it is a false alarm, i.e. if a transaction error in the ADC interface has occurred.



3.6.6 High Voltage APD Bias Settings

Figure 3-14: Principle drawing showing the control of the DACs that set the bias voltage for the High Voltage APDs.

In the complete register table given in Table D-10, the High Voltage APD bias settings memory and some of the status registers dedicated to these settings are listed. Setting the High Voltage Bias in practice means to set the output of 4 individual 8-channel Maxim Max5308 DACs [31] that set the bias voltage to 32 APDs. See Figure 3-14. The APDs are not on the FEC itself, but are placed on small mezzanine cards that sit directly on the crystal rod. The High Voltage bias memory holds all the hamming coded values to be used for updating the DACs. The make the order of the APD bias settings in memory match the crystal mapping, the order is derived from the physical location of the APDs.

The DAC interface has a hamming decoder performing a hamming check before the value is written to the DAC. If a single bit error is found the DAC value memory is updated with the correct value. If a double error is found it is reported in the DAC hamming error register and the given DAC is not updated. The High Voltage Feedback Registers ($HV_FB1 \& 2$) report which DACs have been updated. Normally all DACs should be on after a command has been sent. If this is not the case the reason is most probably due to a double hamming error or a communication error with the given DAC.



Figure 3-15: Flowchart showing the sequence executed for setting the bias voltage for the APDs.

Each DAC is set via a 16 bit shift register. They have separate data out, data in and chip select signals and one common clock line. On the data out line from the DAC the 16 bits that were shifted in last time are directly shifted out. In the DAC interface this is used to verify that the bits shifted in the last time are correctly received by the

DAC. The Power up command is sent to all channels, pulling the output of the DAC to the configured voltage for the channels that are not in error. These erroneous channels will be set to 0V. The sequence that is executed when setting the DACs is shown in Figure 3-15.

3.6.7 RCU Communication

The RCU communicates to the Board Controller via two separate buses; the ALTRO bus and the FC bus. For the ALTRO bus this section deals only with the ALTRO register read/write protocol. The ALTRO bus can also be switched to a data push mode, where the ALTROs or the Board Controller will push data from the FEC to the RCU. The implementation of this feature will be discussed in section 5.4.2.

ALTRO Bus Interface

While the ALTRO interface has been redesigned for PHOS Board Controller, the external functionality is fully kept, both concerning the bus structure and also the interface to internal logic. The latter is a simple synchronous bus protocol featuring data, address and a write enable signal. The external ALTRO bus protocol is defined in [14]. For debug purposes, the ALTRO interface stores the last acknowledged address and the last not acknowledged address in two separate registers. This gives valuable debug information in case there are failing bus transactions.

FC Bus Interface

The FC bus protocol as used in the TPC and PHOS Fee is a slightly modified version of the normal I^2C protocol [32] as defined by Philips almost 20 years ago. The original definition consists of one clock line and one bidirectional serial data line. For the RCU the bidirectional data line is replaced by one input and one output data line. The RCU is the I^2C master, while all the Board Controllers are slaves. The FC bus protocol is defined in [12].

The I^2C protocol is a serial bus protocol that transmits byte size data packets surrounded by start and stop conditions. In general, the I^2C protocol allows for various numbers of data packets, but the TPC/PHOS Fee define that four packets of data are always transmitted. The first packet is the FEC address and a read/write bit. The second packet contains the register address. The third and the forth packet contain the data, and this is either sent or received by the slave depending on the setting of the write bit. The PHOS FC bus slave is based on the same structure as for the TPC, but some modification has been done to make it more robust against external errors. In PHOS, it was seen that with the TPC slow control slave the transmission failed without any reported errors when more cards than one on a branch were powered at the same time. The reason for the error was most probably that one of the not addressed slaves got into an illegal state and blocked the other slaves from using the shared data line. As the PHOS module was sealed when doing these tests, it was not possible to physically measure on the backplane to verify the qualified assumption.

Several measures were taken to prevent one slave from blocking the rest of the communication. Originally a slave not addressed would return to idle immediately after the FEC address was decoded and checked, and then wait for a new start condition. This is changed so that the slave decodes all that is received on the FC bus no matter if the card is addressed or not. This ensures that a fake start condition caused by glitches on the bus or other external errors will not cause a slave to expect a full transaction and therefore get stuck in a wait state. If the card address received is not correct, a mask bit is set to mask both the external output data line and the internal write enable to the registers. Additionally, timeout counters for each byte received are implemented. It takes 78 clks (system clock) to receive a one byte packet, and for convenience the timeout period is set to 128 clks.

Other modifications that have been done to the FC bus slave are that the internal interface has been changed so that the ALTRO interface and the FC bus slave both share the same protocol and signal names. In addition, the FC bus slave does no longer decode the received register address information. For the PHOS Board Controller this is only done in one location; in the register block.

3.6.8 Radiation Robustness Measures

The PHOS FEC is located in a radiation environment and the Altera FPGA might experience SEUs inducing functional errors in the design. The ADC threshold memories and the DAC settings memory implements a configurable possibility to hamming code the values. The hamming code is checked every time the memory is read by internal logic, and if a single bit error is seen the memory location is corrected. If a double bit error is found, this is reported in designated status registers.

Important configuration registers are secured by TMR and voter logic. This has been done since all of these registers are close to 16 bits wide. 16 bits are the maximum width that is handled by the special I^2C bus protocol. Adding hamming encoding to these registers implies that the RCU would need to write the hamming code to an

additional register, if not the Board Controller would generate it itself. Although TMR without feedback as used in this case is not the ideal solution, it was decided to be a good compromise between needed radiation tolerance and a user friendly system design.

The design is synthesized using safe one-hot state machines for increased radiation tolerance. Additional protection of vital state machines have not been done due to area and timing constraints.

Chapter 4

RCU Radiation Tolerance Solution

The RCU is located in a radiation environment, and since the main FPGA on the RCU is SRAM based, it is susceptible to radiation related errors. This chapter will first give a short introduction to single event effects, and ways to deal with these problems. The technology choice of the RCU is then discussed, with details on the architecture of the Xilinx Virtex-II Pro, which is the device selected. The remainder of the chapter is dedicated to the solution for Active Partial Reconfiguration on the RCU Motherboard. The Active Partial Reconfiguration is a feature with the selected FPGA that makes it possible to correct radiation induced errors in the configuration memory.

4.1 Radiation Effects in Integrated Circuits

4.1.1 Single Event Effects

As discussed in section 1.5, the Fee in TPC and PHOS are located in a radiation environment. Integrated circuits operating under such conditions can be expected to experience erroneous behaviour due the radiation they are exposed to. The effects of the radiation are usually divided into single event effects and cumulative effects. A single event effect results from a single energetic particle and has a statistical nature, while the cumulative effects are related to the absorbed dose in the material over time.

Cumulative effects can alter the electrical properties of the device, by for instance changing the switching thresholds of the transistors, hence increasing the probability for single event effects. However, due to the relatively low expected dose rates for the Fee in ALICE, cumulative effects are not of concern. The simulated dose for the innermost readout chambers in the TPC over the ALICE lifetime is maximum 6 Gy, and it has been verified in irradiation tests of the Flash based devices on the RCU that the limit of break down is worst case a dose of 6.8 kRad[7], which equals 68 Gy, i.e. well above the expected dose.



Si + p \rightarrow Mg + α + p + 2 γ

Figure 4-1: An energetic incoming proton interacting with the silicon in the transistor causing a nuclear reaction. The reaction products (Mg and α) are generating dense ionizing tracks inducing an SEU. The gammas are not included in the drawing and the proton is still to energetic to directly cause an SEU.

Single event effects are, on the other hand, a major concern. The single event effects can be ordered after permanency in three levels [26]: SEU, Single Event Latchup and Single Event Burnout. SEUs are expected to be the main concern for the electronics discussed in this thesis. An SEU is defined by NASA as "A radiation induced error in microelectronic circuits caused when charged particles (usually from the radiation belts or from cosmic rays) lose energy by ionizing the medium through which they pass, leaving behind a wake of electron-hole pairs".¹⁹ An SEU is considered to be a soft error, which means that rewriting the memory location will clear the error. One process for generating an SEU is a single heavy ion that strikes the silicon and generates electron-hole pairs along the track. The heavy ion can either come from an external source, or it can be a recoil ion from a nuclear reaction caused by high energetic hadrons hitting the silicon nuclei. The latter is the main cause of SEUs in ALICE and a principle illustration is shown in Figure 4-1. Either way, the result is a charge deposition that can be modelled by a transient current pulse. This current pulse can be interpreted as a signal in the circuit that causes an upset. If this happens in an SRAM memory cell it might cause the memory cell to flip its value and that may in turn have an impact of the functionality of design in the integrated circuit.

¹⁹ http://www.sti.nasa.gov/thesfrm1.htm

4.1.2 Single Event Upset Mitigation Techniques

There are several techniques developed for dealing with the problems of single event effects. These can be categorized as follows[26]:

- *Fabrication process based techniques*. For instance advanced processes such as Silicon-on-insulator.
- *Design based techniques*. These are divided into two sub groups:
 - *Detection techniques:* Hardware redundancy, time redundancy, Error detection coding (EDC), and checker techniques.
 - *Mitigation techniques:* Triple modular redundancy, multiple redundancy with voting, Error detection and correction coding (EDAC) and hardened memory cell level.
- *Recovery Techniques (only applicable to programmable logic):* Reconfiguration, Partial Reconfiguration and Rerouting Design

The fabrication process techniques will reduce total ionizing dose effects and the probability of single event latch-ups to an acceptable level, but they will not remove the occurrence of SEUs completely. The design based techniques are widely used since they can be used at many different levels without changing the fabrication process, which can be very expensive. The various types of redundancy techniques are based on the same principle, that if one path fails there will be others working hence giving correct result at the end. EDAC codes can also be viewed as a redundancy technique, since redundant bits are used to detect and correct errors. Many of the EDAC codes were developed to deal with transmission errors and other types of errors long before the problems of single event effects were known. The different types of EDAC codes are explained in for instance [26]. Hardened memory cell is a different mitigation technique where the memory cell is composed with additional devices to make it less vulnerable to SEUs. Many examples of such memory cells are mentioned in [26].

This chapter will mainly focus on the third point on the list; Recovery Techniques. Active Partial Reconfiguration is described in section 4.3. As part of this work a design has been made for performing partial reconfiguration of the Xilinx Virtex-II Pro on the RCU Motherboard.

4.2 Choice of Technology

4.2.1 FPGA Technologies

There are different types of FPGA technologies in the market. These are categorized by the technology of the programmable switch used as configuration memory. The standard types available are:

- *SRAM*, where the programmable switch is controlled by an SRAM memory cell.
- *Flash (or EPROM/EEPROM)*, where the switch is a floating gate transistor that can be turned off by injecting charge onto the floating gate.
- *Antifuse*, where an electrically programmable switch forms a low resistance path between two metal layers.

SRAM based FPGAs are volatile, meaning that they can be reprogrammed an infinite number of times. It also means that when the power is cut, the content of the SRAM cell is lost and it needs to be reconfigured at power on. The Antifuse and Flash based FPGAs are non-volatile, meaning they keep their programming during a power break. The Antifuse FPGA can only be programmed once, while the Flash based FPGA can be programmed a certain number of times (typically around 100000) before the Flash memory cells begin to fail.

The configuration elements of the Antifuse FPGA are not susceptible to single event effects at all, since they are more like standard cell ASICs. The Flash based FPGAs are less susceptible to single event effects than SRAM based FPGAs, but they may fail completely if absorbing a high enough dose[7].

4.2.2 Why an SRAM based FPGA is selected on the RCU

Selecting a commercial grade SRAM based FPGA may not seem as a logical choice for a system operating in a radiation environment, so prior to selecting the Xilinx Virtex-II Pro FPGA as the main FPGA for the RCU Motherboard different integrated circuits were investigated. With an ASIC the radiation problem would only be at the level of the design, and existing mitigation techniques would be sufficient. There are two main reasons why an ASIC was not chosen. The most important being that an ASIC can not be updated at a later stage, meaning that the system will not be adaptable as it is with an FPGA. Adaptablility is of vital importance in a complex project like ALICE, since it is at the time of board design very hard to foresee the requirements of the RCU to a detail that would be needed with an ASIC. Last minute changes can be foreseen and then an ASIC is not the correct choice. Secondly, it would be much more expensive with an ASIC than with a FPGA for the relatively low amount of devices needed (<1000). Flash based and Antifuse FPGAs have historically been smaller and simpler than the SRAM based FPGAs, and at the time that the device choices were made no large enough Flash based FPGA could be found. Since Flash based FPGAs also need a higher programming voltage, on-site programming is not as easy compared to SRAM based FPGAs. Charge pumps can generate the needed programming voltage on the board without supplying it externally. The downside is that these circuits are generally not very radiation tolerant, meaning that the programming action can only be done when the radiation levels in the ALICE pit are low. The radiation hard SRAM based FPGAs were simply too expensive.

In the end a commercial grade SRAM based FPGA was selected. The Xilinx Virtex-II Pros are fairly inexpensive devices, future upgrades are possible, they offer the resources needed, and they offer an option to do Active Partial Reconfiguration (section 4.3). Combined with different error detection and correction coding techniques, the Active Partial Reconfiguration will reduce the influence of SEUs to a negligible level. The main advantage of Active Partial Reconfiguration is that it is a technique that directly deals with errors in the configuration memory of the FPGA opposed to other mitigation techniques.

4.3 Active Partial Reconfiguration

4.3.1 Xilinx Virtex-II Pro XC2VP7 Architecture

The configuration memory of the Virtex-II Pro, as with other Xilinx devices, is divided into different areas that contain different types of logic. A 3-dimensional address of these areas is given by blocks, major frames and minor frames. A minor frame is the atomic unit of the configuration memory, and is more often referred to as a frame. The size of a minor frame for the Virtex-II Pro XC2VP7 device is 424 bytes, but for Virtex-II devices this number varies with the size of the device. The major frame contains a given number of minor frames. The major frames are divided into different types depending on what kind of logic it configures, for instance global clock logic (GCLK) frames, frames containing input/output (IO) blocks (IOI/IOB), or

frames containing configuration logic blocks (CLBs). How many minor frames per major frame there are, is decided by the type of major frame. The highest level of addressing; the block number separates the configuration memory into three independently addressable blocks of major frames. Block address 0 contains all the major frames as mentioned above, block address 1 contains all the Block RAM (BRAM), while block address 2 contains all BRAM interconnects.





Figure 4-2 shows the configuration memory map of the Xilinx Virtex-II Pro XC2VP7 device. As seen in the figure, this device consists of 1 GCLK major frame, 2 IOB major frames, 2 IOI major frames, 34 CLB major frames, 6 BRAM major frames and 6 BRAM interconnect major frames. Only the major frames are shown in the figure, as only these are possible to map against the actual layout of the device. This could be interesting to be able to pinpoint the exact location in the design space that has experienced an SEUs. This is especially true if the design is constrained so that different parts of the logic are mapped to certain locations.

4.3.2 Configuration of Xilinx Devices

Virtex-II devices support Partial Reconfiguration which is defined by Xilinx in [16] to be "*Rewriting a subset of configuration frames, either while user design is suspended* ("*Shutdown*" partial reconfiguration) or while the user design is operating ("*Active*" partial reconfiguration)." There are two reasons for wanting to perform partial reconfiguration. The first is to change design behaviour on certain parts of the device by changing one or more sub modules, a filter for instance, while the design is active. This gives strong restrictions to how the inter modular communication is constrained. The other reason is to correct memory upsets in high radiation environments, which is the reason for using it on the RCU.

A configuration file for a Xilinx FPGA consists of three parts whether it is a file for initial, full configuration or partial configuration. This is shown to the left in Figure 4-3. The configuration interface of the Xilinx Virtex-II Pro device consists of a set of registers for initialisation of the configuration process. This initialization – that can be setting the number of frames to write, start address of first frame, enabling of readback etc., is done by the header of the configuration file. One of these registers, the *Frame Data In Register*, is used for writing the configuration data to the device. This register is a frame buffer, and the writing of frames is pipelined. This means that the first frame is written to the configuration memory while the second frame is being shifted into the frame buffer. This implies that a pad frame must be written after the last frame of configuration data. Figure 4-4 shows a simplified sketch of this concept. The *Frame Data In Register* or the frame buffer is shown in the left. This way of updating the configuration memory, by shifting data into a buffer and then performing a copy operation opposed to shifting data directly through the configuration registers, is what makes Active Partial Reconfiguration possible.



Figure 4-3: Left: Structure of a Xilinx configuration file. Right: Structure of the generated frame files: Write-frame file and read-frame file.

Active Partial Reconfiguration on the RCU is done in two ways: Continuously overwrite the configuration memory regardless if there has been an error or not (scrubbing), or read back the configuration memory frame by frame, check for errors and overwrite the frame if errors are found. For scrubbing, a file generated by the Xilinx development kit is used. For frame by frame read back, tailor made software is written that recognises the individual frames in the original programming file, splits this into individual frame files and adds header and footer that hold command sequences for either reading or writing a frame. The frame files are stored as an answer book on the Flash Memory Device, and used for comparison and correction when reading the frames in the radiation environment. The format of the frame files is shown to the right in Figure 4-3. The write-frame file consists of a file header that addresses the given frame, a data frame followed by a pad frame to shift the data frame in, and at last a footer. The footer ends the write operation by disabling the

selectMAP interface. The read-frame file has the same setup, except for the lack of pad frame. Reading the configuration memory is also done in a pipelined way as it is for writing. In this case this implies that the first frame that is read is irrelevant, since the frame output buffer has not been filled with data. The second frame that is read out is verified against the content of the answer book read-frame, and then the read footer is written to the Xilinx to end the operation.



Figure 4-4: Simplified sketch showing the concept of writing to the configuration memory of the Xilinx Virtex-II Pro

The reason for generating individual files for reading and writing frames is to keep the internal structure of the RCU support FPGA firmware as simple as possible as no selectMAP command coder is then needed. A very important point is also that when solving it this way, it is at any point in time possible to update the header/footer information that contains all the selectMAP commands. Not only does this make the design more fault proof as nothing is hard coded, but it also makes it possible to change the reconfiguration scheme. One can for instance verify a group of frames that maps to a certain sub module in the design, instead of just a single frame at the time.

4.3.3 SelectMAP Interface

There are several ways of communicating with the configuration memory in a Xilinx Virtex-II Pro [6], but only JTAG and selectMAP operated in slave mode are possible to use when partial reconfiguration and readback is to be implemented. The selectMAP interface provides an 8-bit bidirectional data bus interface to the Virtex-II Pro configuration logic, and therefore provides a much faster interface than JTAG

does. Slave selectMAP mode means that the configuration clock is externally driven by the configuration controller device, opposed to master selectMAP mode, of which the configuration clock is controlled by the device itself. The RCU uses the selectMAP interface in a controlled clock fashion, implying that the configuration clock is toggled only when there is data ready, while chip select is kept asserted.



Figure 4-5: Waveform showing the principles of an initial configuration sequence in slave selectMAP mode with a controlled clock scheme of a Xilinx Virtex-II Pro device.

The waveform for an initial configuration process in slave selectMAP mode with controlled clock is shown in Figure 4-5. The $prog_b$ signal starts the initial configuration sequence. This erases the Xilinx configuration if kept low more than 300 ns. The device responds by pulling down *init_b* and releasing it after $prog_b$ is asserted again. Then the device is properly initialized and ready to receive the data file including header and footer.

The data loading starts when deasserting $rdwr_b$ and cs_b . This has to be done in this order or it can be interpreted by the device as the start of an abort sequence. The device responds by pulling low *busy* as a signal that it is ready to receive data. Data is then put on the bi directional bus and *cclk* is toggled. The device samples the data on rising edge of *cclk*. The max frequency for *cclk* is 50 MHz. After all the data has been loaded, the device goes into startup phase, and if everything is ok, the *done* pin is pulled high. This pin is high whenever the Xilinx is configured. For partial reconfiguration the initialization should not be done, since this erases the Xilinx. The startup is also not needed since the design in the FPGA is already alive and well.

4.3.4 Limitations of Active Partial Reconfiguration

Active Partial Reconfiguration puts special constraints to the user design. A certain part of the CLBs are Look Up Tables (LUTs). These LUTs can during synthesis be

defined to be used as memory elements. This is area economic for instance when building large shift registers. As the memory elements used in the LUT are part of the configuration memory as well, this feature must be disabled when running Active Partial Reconfiguration, or else these memory locations will be overwritten with the default value in the scrubbing file or the frame files.

The BRAM part in the Xilinx can not be reconfigured during runtime, since these memory elements are accessed both from the design space and the configuration space by the same interface. If looking into the original programming file, the default values of the BRAM as set in the design can actually be seen. The BRAM must be secured against SEUs by the use of hamming encoding or other SEU mitigation techniques. Also, since the internal frame counter increments automatically at the end of each frame when writing data to the input frame buffer, the very first major frame of BRAM can not be used in the design and must be prohibited in the design constraint file.

An additional limitation when relying on Active Partial Reconfiguration is that the configuration stream can not be encrypted and readback must be enabled. This is not a real constraint for the actual project discussed here since this is anyway open source, but might be a limitation in industrial projects.

4.4 Active Partial Reconfiguration Solution on the RCU Motherboard

4.4.1 Introduction



Figure 4-6: Sketch showing the RCU, emphasizing the solution for Active Partial Reconfiguration in the bottom right. The data path is given by black arrows.

The solution for Active Partial Reconfiguration of the main FPGA on the RCU Motherboard is shown in Figure 4- 6^{20} . It consists of a Flash based support FPGA (Actel ProASIC^{plus} APA075 [17]) that communicates both with the selectMAP interface on the Xilinx Virtex-II Pro, and to an on board Flash Memory Device[18]. The RCU support FPGA and the Flash Memory Device has been found radiation tolerant for the dose and flux that are expected in ALICE[7]. The support FPGA has a

²⁰ The firmware design of the RCU support FPGA is done in cooperation with Ketil Røed, Bergen University College (ketil.roed@ift.uib.no)

communication interface upwards to the DCS board. All needed configuration files for the Xilinx are stored on the Flash Memory Device, and the RCU support FPGA offers three main options for configuration:

- *Initial Configuration*. This option will erase any design that is loaded into the Xilinx before uploading a new design from the Flash Memory Device.
- *Complete Reconfiguration (Scrubbing).* This option will overwrite the configuration memory regardless if errors have occurred or not.
- *Frame by Frame Readback, Verification and Correction.* In this mode of operation, each individual frame is generated from the original programming file and stored as an answer book on the Flash Memory Device. These files are then to be used for comparison when reading back the same frames in the radiation environment. Any errors found are counted and the frame address that contained the error is stored. The errors are then automatically corrected by overwriting the given frame.

The firmware on the RCU support FPGA needs to be simple and efficient, as general as possible and most importantly; 100% working from the day of installation – as no later upgrades can be done. With this in mind, as much workload as possible is handed over to the DCS board, making the Active Partial Reconfiguration Firmware only do as basic tasks as possible.

4.4.2 RCU Flash Architecture

As shown in Figure 4-7 the RCU Flash Memory Device is divided into to 3 different spaces: The pointer space, the info space and the file space. This ensures a configurable system, where as little as possible information is hard coded in the RCU support FPGA firmware. It will also make it possible to change the location of the files in the Flash Memory Device if this is needed over the lifetime of the experiment, for instance due to weariness of the Flash Memory Device itself.

The pointer space is located in the boot section of the Flash Memory Device, since the sectors in this area are 8 Kbytes opposed to 64 Kbytes on the rest. This makes it possible to erase one single pointer and redefine it to point to a different location on the Flash Memory Device. In this way, several designs can be stored at the Flash Memory Device at the same time if needed. The pointer space contains pointers to the location of the info space. The addresses of the pointers are predefined and can not be changed. A pointer value of 0xFFFF, which is the default value of an empty Flash Memory Device, means that the pointer is undefined and the Flash Memory Device needs to be initialized. The info space holds information on the location of the programming files on the Flash Memory Device. Excessive information is stored concerning the individual frames as the handling of the frame files are a bit more complicated than for initial configuration and scrubbing. In the file space all the different files are stored. For initial configuration and scrubbing, this is one file each. For frame by frame readback, verification and correction the number of files are twice the number of frames to verify, since there is one read frame and one write frame defined. This is divided into a read block and a write block that are divided by a configurable offset.

| ointer pace | Initial Configuration file Pointer (to info-space) |
|----------------|--|
| | Scrubbing file Pointer (to info-space) |
| L C O | Frame files Pointer (to info-space) |
| | Initial Configuration file start address Initial Configuration file stop address RCU main FPGA Firmware Version |
| Info Space | Scrubbing file start address Scrubbing file stop address |
| | Start address of READ BLOCK Frame offset Number of frames Size of read-frame file excluding header/footer Size of write-frame file including header/footer read-frame file header size read-frame file footer size |
| | Initial Configuration file |
| | Scrubbing file |
| File Space | READ BLOCK Read-frame file 1 Read-frame file 2 |
| | Read-frame file n (n = 936) |
| | WRITE BLOCK Write-frame file 1 Write-frame file 2 |
| | Write-frame file n (n = 936) |

Figure 4-7: Logical architecture of the RCU Flash Memory Device.

Additionally, the firmware version of the configuration files stored on the Flash is also found in the initial configuration information space. This gives the upper DCS layers a possibility to automatically verify that all RCUs are in synch at startup. In the future, more information might be added in the info space if needed. This information will not be used by the RCU support FPGA.

4.4.3 Firmware Overview

A block diagram of the RCU support FPGA firmware is shown in Figure 4-8. The firmware enables three modes of operation: Normal Operation mode, selectMAP mode and Flash mode. The two latter modes are direct tunnels to either the Xilinx selectMAP interface or the RCU Flash Memory Device interface. These two interfaces are implemented on the DCS board, as described in section 3.4. The mode of operation is decided by two dedicated lines set by the DCS board. If normal operation mode is selected, the RCU support FPGA firmware modules are accessible for the DCS board through a Memory Mapped interface. This section will focus on the firmware operation when in normal operation mode, as the other modes are covered in section 3.4.



Figure 4-8: Block diagram showing the RCU support FPGA firmware

The Configuration Controller performs the main tasks of the RCU support FPGA. The Power Up Detect Module is responsible for starting an initial configuration of the RCU main FPGA at power up. The two memories are included so that the DCS board can access the read back data from the Flash Memory Device and the selectMAP interface for more thorough debugging. Internally they are not used. The Address Generator generates read addresses for the Flash Memory Device. To save resources, the 9 least significant bits of the Address Generator are used as the write address for the internal memories when controlled by internal logic. The selectMAP interface available for the DCS board. The selectMAP interface implements the Xilinx selectMAP bus protocol when in normal operation mode.

An initial configuration command can be issued either from the DCS board or on power up. Then the Xilinx will be configured with the initial configuration file stored on the Flash Memory Device. Scrubbing is done by issuing a command from the DCS board. The scrub-cycle can run a given number of times or infinitely until an abort is issued. Frame by frame readback, verification and correction can be done in two ways: The normal mode is to loop through all frames stored on the Flash Memory Device and correct the Xilinx if needed continuously until abort, or a given number of times. Additionally it is also possible to step through one frame at the time by command from the DCS board, and then read the contents of the memories. This will make it possible to pinpoint the exact bit that has been flipped. Even if it is not foreseen to be used on the RCU, it offers a good tool giving highly detailed information when running the system in irradiation tests.

4.4.4 Registers

The memory mapped slave on the RCU support FPGA will decode the address/data set up by the DCS board when the registers in Table D-15 are addressed. No registers are wider than 16 bits since the number of data lines going from the DCS board to the RCU support FPGA are limited to 16. It was decided that this was sufficient for the RCU support FPGA when the RCU Motherboard was designed, as there are not enough pins on the Actel ProASIC^{plus} APA075 FPGA to support the full 32 bit data width.

4.4.5 Available Commands

The normal operation mode is command based. This implies that all internal logic is controlled by the two command registers that are available for the DCS board. In addition an input data register is used as a configuration register for some of the commands. The main command register (Table D-16) is used for executing the main tasks of the RCU support FPGA, which includes clearing of error and status registers internally in the RCU support FPGA and the different configuration options as discussed in section 4.4.1. The selectMAP command register (Table D-17) is used for executing atomic tasks on the selectMAP bus, for instance reading and writing 2x8 bits or sending a selectMAP abort command.



4.4.6 Configuration Controller

Figure 4-9: Simplified schematic drawing showing the Configuration Controller of the RCU support FPGA.

A simplified sketch of the configuration controller is shown in Figure 4-9. The Controller State Machine controls the execution of the main tasks: Initial configuration, scrubbing and frame by frame readback, verification and correction. In addition, this module sets the error and status registers and controls the specific Flash interface signals to read data from the Flash Memory Device. A flowchart showing the principles of the configuration controller state machine is given in Figure 4-10. Depending on which task that is executed, three main paths are followed. For all tasks a dedicated counter is counting the number of cycles an operation has been executed. For scrubbing and initial configuration, the number of cycles is defined to be the number of times the file has been written. For initial configuration this will never be more than one, as it makes no sense running initial configuration continuously. For frame by frame readback, verification and correction, the number of cycles is defined to be the number of times all frames stored in the Flash Memory Device has been read, verified and overwritten in case of an error. If scrubbing or frame by frame readback, verification and correction are ended by an abort from the DCS board, the ongoing cycle will always finish before the task is stopped.

The Address Generator, that generates the addresses for the Flash Memory Device and the internal memories, is controlled by the Configuration Controller. The pointer addresses will be loaded when a new command has been received, or when starting a new cycle. The reason for reloading the pointer address and hence again reading all the information from the info space on the Flash Memory Device at each new cycle,



is to refresh these registers prior to using this information. This is done in case registers of the RCU support FPGA have experienced SEUs.

Figure 4-10: Simplified flowchart of the configuration controller. Three possible paths can be followed in the flowchart: To the right is the frame by frame readback/verification, in the middle is the scrubbing and to the left is the initial configuration.

If differences are found when reading back frames and comparing them, the corrupted frame is reconfigured and the frame number of the corrupted frame is stored. The error checking is done by XORing the 16 bit vector from the Flash Memory Device to the 16 bit vector from the Xilinx selectMAP. If the result is not equal to 0, the total number of differences is found using a pipelined structure counting the number of '1's in 4 bits per clock cycle by the use of a LUT. The number of errors is then added to the frame by frame error counter. A signal – SEU error – flags if an SEU has been found in the current frame and this is made available to the DCS board and the RCU main FPGA. It is cleared after the erroneous frame has been corrected.

A frame counter keeps track of which frame is being read, counting down from the total number of frames as stored on the Flash Memory Device. If an error has occurred in one of the frames, the frame number is saved to a register. This means that the latest frame with error is always stored and can be read by the DCS board. This number is not the frame address itself, but the frame number as given by the sequence of frames stored on the Flash Memory Device.

4.4.7 Power Up Detection

As the RCU Motherboard does not host an external Power Up Detection component, a simple algorithm has been designed on the RCU support FPGA to check if the RCU Motherboard is properly powered. In that case it tries to initiate an initial configuration from the Flash Memory Device. This means that if the Flash Memory Device is properly configured with an initial configuration file, the RCU main FPGA will be alive on power up.

As the state of the FPGAs and the Flash Memory Device on the RCU Motherboard is uncertain in the power up phase, it is foreseen that the Power Up Detection Module might try to program the RCU main FPGA a couple of times without succeeding. If such failure arises, the error registers will get cleared and the Power Up Detection Module will try again until it succeeds, or until a stop power up code is written from the DCS board. This is designed using a small state machine that in idle state checks the state of the *done*, *busy* and *init_b* from the Xilinx selectMAP interface and the *RynBy* from the Flash Memory Device. When all signals except *done* are high the RCU is expected to be powered, i.e. the Xilinx is ready to be configured. *Done* is low when there is no design loaded in the Xilinx FPGA. If the *done* goes high, the device is successfully configured and the state machine in charge of the power up detection will never leave idle state. Additionally, the state machine is always checking the value of last state to prevent erroneous behaviour in case the state machine powers up in a state different to idle.

4.4.8 SelectMAP interface Implementation

The selectMAP interface implements the communication with the selectMAP bus on the Xilinx when operating in memory mapped mode. It is operating the selectMAP bus in slave selectMAP mode (Figure 4-5). The incoming data are being bit flipped byte by byte as the most significant bit on the selectMAP bus is defined to be bit 0. The selectMAP interface is an 8 bit interface, but it is handling 16 bits at a time internally. This is done for consistency since the width of interface to the Flash Memory Device is 16 bits, and so is the width of the DCS bus to the RCU support FPGA. The selectMAP interface is able to do atomic commands like:

- *Read* 2 x 8 bits are read from the Xilinx selectMAP bus, storing the data in a big endian 16 bit word.
- *Write* 2 x 8 bits are written to the Xilinx selectMAP bus (16 bit word input big endian format).
- *Init Xilinx Prog_b* line is pulled low for 400 ns, hence telling the Xilinx to clear its configuration memory.
- *Startup Xilinx* A command that is only needed when doing initial configuration. The startup command lets the *cclk* run continuously for 3200 ns, which is more than enough for a startup procedure.
- *Abort ongoing procedure* The abort is initialised during reading or writing by inverting *rdwr_b* line while *cs_b* is low and the *cclk* is running. It can be done if the selectMAP bus has entered an illegal state.

The speed of the interface is by design choice decided to be slower than the maximum speed. This is done since it anyway takes at least 4 clks to read data from the Flash Memory Device.

The selectMAP interface can be controlled either by the Configuration Controller or by the selectMAP Control Module. The latter interprets all commands being written to the selectMAP command register (Table D-17) and by using a simple state machine executes them towards the selectMAP interface. Prior to finding out how to split the original programming file into individual frame files, the selectMAP control was added so that complete frames could be read back to the DCS board and stored in separate files. These files were then to be used as the answer book on the Flash Memory Device. An additional important point is that at the time of software implementation of the selectMAP interface on the DCS board was not very sophisticated and did not support frame read operations. Eventually, the direct operation of the selectMAP interface has turned to be very handy in normal operation of the system as well, and have been decided to be kept as is.

4.4.9 Radiation Tolerance Measures

The purpose of the RCU support FPGA is to increase the radiation tolerance of the RCU main FPGA by correcting any error occurring in the configuration memory. It has been through extensive irradiation testing[7, 8]. These tests have not been able to detect any faulty behaviour at all until the device broke down after having received the dose equivalent to 10 ALICE lifetimes. This has proven that the device itself is radiation tolerant within the limits given by the environment, but it still does not prevent the need of thinking mitigation techniques in design space, since these registers are not Flash based.

The implemented design uses 93.4% of the available logic blocks of the FPGA without SEU protection logic, and the estimated possible clock frequency is 40.870 MHz, which is at the limit of what is acceptable. On the other hand, there are not many registers that hold static information of any importance. For instance, all internal registers storing the file information data, used for correct access of the RCU Flash Device, are updated frequently. This implies that any SEU in the register will be cleared prior to using this information. And since the state machines have been designed as safe one-hot state machines, an error in them will most probably only cause the design to go to idle and not influence the operation of the RCU main FPGA.

4.5 Integration with the Fee DCS

The RCU support FPGA solution has been integrated in the overall Fee DCS, and a special software device has been written to control the RCU Flash Memory Device and the operation of the RCU support FPGA firmware[25]. The software makes it possible to control the reconfiguration solution from a PVSS panel (Figure 4-11), additionally to receiving information on the status of the reconfiguration operation. The blue colour in the figure means that the given RCU has been configured, while the white colour is undefined, meaning that the RCU is most probably not powered when this screenshot has been taken. In addition a green colour would mean that

scrubbing or frame by frame readback, verification and correction is ongoing. Red would indicate error. The PVSS panel as shown in the figure is still under development.



Figure 4-11: PVSS panel for operation of RCU support FPGA for TPC (by ALICE TPC DCS group - C. Lippmann²¹)

4.6 Active Partial Reconfiguration on other Devices

The solution developed for Active Partial Reconfiguration has been suggested adapted for use on the TRU and the Trigger-OR. The TRU has the same hardware implementation with a support FPGA and a Flash Memory Device. As the support FPGA on the TRU is connected to the FC bus, the memory mapped interface and the mode wrapper must be removed, and an FC bus slave added instead. In addition a Flash interface that offers the possibility to do write operations must be added. The problem with these adaptations is the size of the support FPGA. There is most likely

²¹ Christian Lippman: Christian.Lippmann@cern.ch

not space on the device to host the add-ons, and even not space on the Flash Memory Device to host all the programming files. Hence a stripped down version must be designed, where for instance only initial configuration and scrubbing could be performed. Today, a Xilinx programming ROM is used on the TRU. This device exists in parallel to the Reconfiguration Network. The programming ROM needs to be updated by JTAG, i.e. one has to be physically present to do the task. Even if frame by frame readback, verification and correction may not be possible to perform by the Reconfiguration Network, adapting a lightweight version of the solution for Active Partial Reconfiguration would be wise even if only to make it possible to update the firmware on the TRU whenever needed.

The Trigger-OR does not have a Reconfiguration Network, but Active Partial Reconfiguration might be executed by the DCS board in parallel with the normal register transactions.

4.7 Effectivity of the Active Partial Reconfiguration

According to [33] a rule of thumb is to have a scrub rate at least a magnitude higher than the SEU rate. Based on simulations on the radiation environment for TPC and results from irradiation tests of the Xilinx Virtex-II Pro device, the approximate SEU rate for the RCU main FPGA is $3.0 \cdot 10^{-5}$ Hz, or approximately 0.5 SEU per RCU in a 4 hour run period²². As seen by the measurements give in Table 4-1, the frequency of the error correction scheme is approximately 10000 times faster than what is needed according to [33]. It is important to emphasize that the simulation done of the radiation environment gives results with quite high uncertainty, so the actual SEU rate might be higher than calculated, but not to an extent that will matter. It is also interesting to see that the scrubbing will correct an error twice as fast as when using frame by frame readback, verification and correction. The drawback of this method is that one is completely blind when it comes to number of SEUs experienced by the FPGA.

In proton – proton collisions, the mean time between events is approximately 1 ms and the detection time of an event is approximately 90 μ s. This means that around 135 events are read out during the time it takes to read all and check all the

²² Calculated by Ketil Røed (ketil.roed@ift.uib.no). Yet unpublished.

configuration frames in the Xilinx. One SEU is enough to generate a functional error in the design, for instance if it occurs in a LUT configuration of the logic related to the readout. This implies that if the occurring SEU leads to a functional error, this functional error is present for up to 135 events.

| Operation | Time | Frequency if run continously |
|----------------------------|----------|------------------------------|
| Initial Configuration | ~ 113 ms | - |
| Scrubbing | ~ 77 ms | ~ 13 Hz |
| Read one frame | ~ 163 µs | - |
| Write one frame | ~ 180 µs | - |
| Read all frames (no error) | ~ 150 ms | ~ 6.6 Hz |

Table 4-1: Measured times for the different operations. Note that the time of the scrubbing is dependent on the design, as the scrubbing file is compressed. The time given is with a special design used for irradiation tests.

If the RCU main FPGA firmware is not implementing any standard mitigation techniques such as for instance TMR, this functional error can also stay put even if the cause of the error is removed. If such a functional error occurs for instance in a state machine, this can cause the state machine into enter an illegal state. If the state machine is implemented as a safe state machine, e.g. the state machine goes to idle if an illegal state is detected, the next logic can wait for input from this failing state machine that never arrives. If the state machine is not safe/one-hot, it might jump to a legal state when it is not supposed to, which is even worse. The final consequence of this can be a total hang-up of the logic – causing a need of a system reset.

When designing the RCU main FPGA firmware, a good idea would be to constraint the allocation of the Readout Node and the Control Node into separate major frames. This will give the DCS a possibility to evaluate in which node the SEU has occurred, and if it is of any concern for the data readout process. An SEU leading to a functional error in the Control Node is far less critical than likewise in the Readout Node.

The conclusion is that Active Partial Reconfiguration is very effective in correcting SEUs occurring in the configuration memory of the Xilinx, but it does not vaccinate the FPGA against them. The chance of these SEUs generating functional errors in the design is decided by several factors:

- *The amount of logic utilized by the design.* An SEU in an unused area of the chip will not do any harm to the operation of the design.
- *The dead time of different parts of the logic*. The functional error can be corrected while the logic is in an idle state.
- Implementation of mitigation techniques in the design.

The last point is the only point that is possible to fully control, and by adding for instance TMR on the data path in the RCU main FPGA design, this would significantly improve the radiation tolerance of the design as discussed in section 6.3 and in Chapter 7.

Chapter 5

Processing of Trigger Information

As the major part of the work concerning trigger and data path presented in this thesis is related to the trigger reception, this will be described in detail. The triggers are essential in ALICE to select events of interest, and this chapter describes the reception and handling of triggers and trigger information in the Fee and the BusyBox. The distribution of the triggers to the FECs done by the RCU is discussed, and a short overview of the data readout process is given. How the trigger receiving logic is integrated in the BusyBox is presented at the end.

5.1 System Requirements and Overview

The purpose of the ALICE experiment is to record high multiplicity events. The event rate for Pb–Pb collisions at the LHC maximum luminosity of 10^{27} cm⁻²s⁻¹ will be about 8000 minimum bias collisions per second. This low interaction rate makes it possible for ALICE to use slow but high granularity detectors, such as the TPC. A trigger based data readout system is designed to cope with complicated events and a detector set that varies in both sensitive period and readout time. There are two major types of triggers in ALICE; the triggers generated by the TTC system and the High Level Trigger. The first reduces the overall data rate to about 25 GB/s when considering the Pb – Pb events within 10% centrality, while only 1.25 GB/s is stored to disk after the fast online data analysis provided by HLT.

In the PHOS detector, an L0 trigger from the CTP [10] tells the Fee to start to buffer data. The TPC, which is a much slower detector, will start to buffer data on arrival of the L1a trigger. The CTP sends messages that can be decoded by the Fee into L2a triggers with accompanied information. At the arrival of an L2a trigger the Readout Node in the RCU main FPGA (Figure 3-8) will ship the data to the DAQ system. The Fee have the ability to buffer 4 or 8 events in the ALTRO depending on the number of samples configured. So if the DAQ system is busy, the event will be shipped whenever possible. The readout can be done in two ways: normal readout or sparse readout. The first will read all channels that connected to one RCU one by one and ship the data to the DAQ system, the latter enables the possibility to skip readout of

empty channels. Then the Board Controller builds a hitmap memory that lists only non-empty channels. In parallel with the Fee the BusyBox informs the TTC system when the Fee can not accept more triggers. The Trigger Receiver Module that decodes the trigger information from the CTP is common for the RCU and for the BusyBox.

Every single RCU must be able to handle configuration and perform a readout of all the channels connected to the readout partition. On the RCU, this has been implemented as seen to the right in Figure 3-8. The data flow is from the ALTROs of the FECs, via the ALTRO Interface Module, to the Data Assembler that adds the Common Data Header (CDH) from the Trigger Receiver Module. The data is then shipped to the DAQ system via the SIU interface. The ALTRO bus, which is a multi drop bus that connects the FECs to the RCU, consists of two branches. One of the core elements concerning the readout process is the Readout Node in the RCU main FPGA. The Readout Node consists of the following modules:

- *Trigger Receiver Module:* Decodes the trigger sequences being submitted from the Trigger System. This is covered in section 5.2.4.
- *Event Manager:* Selects the trigger source depending on configuration. Either TTCrx trigger, software test Trigger-OR hardware test trigger.
- *ALTRO Interface Module:* Implements the bus master of the ALTRO bus that communicates with all the slaves of the FECs. Most importantly it is in charge of the data readout functionality at the arrival of an L2a trigger. In the first phase, data is moved from the ALTRO buffers to the internal data memories. In the second phase, the data is pushed from the data memory to the RORC via the DDL by the Data Assembler.
- *Data Assembler:* Reads data from the Data Memories and combines it with the formatted header information from the Trigger Receiver Module and additional information generated by the Readout Node itself (e.g. block length and status information), and builds a structured data block according to the ALICE data format.
- *SIU Interface:* Implements the Fee-SIU bus protocol to transmit and receive information from the DAQ system.
- *Instruction Sequencer:* Executes ALTRO/Board Controller register instructions towards the ALTRO interface given in the Instruction Memory, and is mainly used for configuration of the FECs.

• *Result Unit:* Holds the results and status information of the executed instructions.

5.2 Trigger Reception and Handling in TPC & PHOS Fee

5.2.1 Introduction

The system clock and triggers with associated data are received by the DCS board from the TTC system via an optical cable interface. The receiver of the data is the TTCrx[34] ASIC. The TTCrx chip is directly connected to the onboard FPGA on the DCS board. In addition, two lines – channel A and channel B, are routed to the FPGA on the RCU Motherboard (Figure 4-6). The channel A is used for distributing the triggers itself, while the data on channel B is the accompanied raw data.

The natural choice would be to use the TTCrx to decode the trigger data, and read and control this with the DCS board FPGA[35]. But if a radiation related functional error occurs in the DCS board FPGA, valid events might be lost and the run may be aborted because of missing event fragments in the DAQ system. To prevent this, the trigger handling is moved to the RCU main FPGA, where this task is performed by a Trigger Receiver Module. Many functions in this module are a duplication of functions already existing in the TTCrx. The Trigger Receiver Module decodes serial channel B data and L0/L1a triggers coming on channel A. In this way, all sensitive data is decoded and stored in the FPGA of the RCU Motherboard on which measures have been developed to prevent failures due to radioactive effects (see Chapter 4). There are several other advantages to this solution. The speed of the system increases since the information is decoded where it is used, and does not need to be transferred from the DCS FPGA to the RCU main FPGA. The space on the Altera Excalibur device is also limited and receiving and decoding triggers is a quite area consuming task. In addition the TTCrx chip does not support decoding of L0 trigger submitted on channel A, since this is a change in the specification done after the TTCrx was designed.

5.2.2 Functional Requirements

In ALICE, the trigger is essential for the data readout process, and the trigger receiving logic must be able to do the following:

- Decode all the information being submitted from the TTC system, on both channel A and channel B. The decoded information is among other things used to buffer data, start a readout sequence and identify an event.
- Detect transmission errors and connection errors related to the optical connection to the LTU and flag these to the DCS.
- Be able to operate correctly in the Fee of four different sub-detectors that all are implemented with the RCU, namely TPC, PHOS, EMCal and FMD, as well as for the BusyBox in the same sub-detector systems.
- Always generate the CDH [36] correctly so that no event fragments are missing when the DAQ system is reconstructing the events and aborts the run.

The Trigger Receiver Module must decode the defined legal trigger sequences for all sub-detectors of which it will be used. The legal trigger sequences are defined in Table 5-1. There are three different types of trigger sequences that must be supported: physics triggers, software triggers and calibration triggers. The software triggers are used for information from the TTC system to the Fee, while the calibration triggers are for calibration purposes. Only the latter use the pre-pulse. For TPC, the calibration triggers are sent as normal software triggers, and of the four discussed sub-detectors only FMD is using the special calibration trigger sequences²³.

| Legal Trigger Sequences for TPC, PHOS, FMD* and EMCal |
|---|
| L0 – (L1r) |
| L0 – L1a – L1a message – L2a message |
| L0 – L1a – L1a message – L2r message |
| pre-pulse* |
| pre-pulse – L0* |
| pre-pulse – L0 – L1a – L1a message – L2a message* |
| pre-pulse – L0 – L1a – L1a message – L2r message* |
| Table 5-1. Table showing legal trigger sequences for TPC_PHOS_EMD |

and EMCal. The sequences marked with the star are only valid for FMD.

A feature called Region of Interest is defined but currently not used. The Region of Interest will tell the receiving Readout Node if it is within a region where interesting data might be found for a given sub-detector. If it is included in the future, it will be submitted between the L1a message and the L2 message on the Serial Channel B. The triggers and messages arrive with specified latencies as given in Table 5-2. The pre-pulse comes in the gap prior to the bunchcrossing time (BC0), and does not have

²³ The PHOS led calibration system will also make use of the pre-pulse, but it is not decided at the time of writing if this system shall use the trigger receiver module directly.
a specified latency. The receiving logic needs to control that the sequence and timing is correct, and flag any error related to this. All data transmitted on the serial channel B is hamming coded and needs to be decoded by the receiving logic. If several hamming decoding errors occur, it is an indication of a problem with the optical line connecting transmitting the data from the LTU to the Fee. This must be reported and handled by the DCS.

| Trigger | Latency with respect of BC0 |
|-----------------|------------------------------|
| LO | 1.2 μs |
| L1a | 6.5 μs |
| L2a/L2r message | 88 μs (Range 80 μs – 500 μs) |

Table 5-2: Legal timing of the trigger sequences. BC0 is the bunchcrossing leading to the collision.

Effort has been put in to making the Trigger Receiver Module as generic as possible to ease future upgrades. This might be needed, as the information being transmitted by the CTP is likely to be extended.

5.2.3 Input from the Trigger System



Figure 5-1: L0 and L1a trigger distribution on Channel A. The clock is the system clock that is directly dependent on the bunchcrossing frequency in LHC.

The Channel A transmits the triggers. It is an LVDS output from the TTCrx on the DCS board. The Channel A is synchronous with the clock, and a level 0 trigger is defined to have a length of 1 clk. A level 1 accept trigger is of length 2 clks, see Figure 5-1.

Channel B

Data transmitted on the serial channel B can be divided into two types of messages: Individually addressed messages and broadcast messages. The default state of the serial channel B is high, so a zero on the line indicates a start condition. The next bit after that is the frame type (FMT) bit that indicates if it an individual addressed message or a broadcast message. Both types of messages are hamming encoded. The hamming encoding is given in Table D-32 and Table D-33.

Broadcast Messages

The format of the broadcast message address is given in Table D-23. For a broadcast message, 8 bits of command/data follow before 5 bits of hamming code. The hamming code spans over the command/data bits. The command/data is split into a user message, a system message and two single bits for eventcount reset and bunchcount reset as given in Table D-24. Any bit set to one in the user message or system message is decoded as a pre-pulse. More system/user messages might be added in the future. The eventcount reset is not used in ALICE, while the bunchcount reset is important, as this resets the local bunchcounter that is used for event identification.

Individually Addressed Messages

The format of the individually addressed message is shown in Table D-25. Even if the name suggests that this message is addressed only to specified TTCrx chips, this is not the case. The TTC system always operates in broadcast mode, so all the address bits are always 0. The data is split into 4 bits of address and 12 bits of data. The individually addressed message is also hamming coded, and the hamming code spans over the 32 bits shaded in Table D-25. Information transmitted by individually addressed messages is for instance the L1 header/data and the L2a header/data. The complete list is given in Table D-25. The trigger receiving logic must decode all defined addresses from 0x1 - 0x8 and it must be possible to upgrade for possible future use of the remaining, unused addresses. For the L1a data, L2a data and the RoI data, the content of the data word is decided by order of the data words, i.e. which word in the received message it is. The data following the Fee reset is unimportant.

The individually addressed messages contains information defining if it is a physics trigger sequence, software trigger sequence or a calibration trigger sequence. For software triggers the information concerning the participating sub-detectors are submitted and the type of software trigger is set. Currently only start of run and end of run software trigger sequences are defined. The bunchcrossing ID and the orbit ID together gives a unique event ID. The bunchcrossing is the number of the particle-bunch involved in the collision. The Orbit ID is the number of times all bunches has travelled one orbit in the LHC ring. For physics triggers the trigger class is submitted. The trigger class is defined by the parameters required to make up a trigger selection: trigger cluster, the set of trigger inputs, past/future protection requirements and a few other parameters. The definition of the messages is given in Table D-27, Table D-28,

Table D-29 and Table D-30. The abbreviations used in the tables are given in Table D-31.

Not all information received from the TTC system is interesting for the Fee, but are submitted to the DAQ system as part of the CDH and used for correct event reconstruction (for instance Trigger Class).

5.2.4 Fee Trigger Receiver Overview



Figure 5-2: Schematic overview of the Trigger Receiver on the Fee.

A schematic overview of the Trigger Receiver is shown in Figure 5-2. The Trigger Receiver is possible to synthesize in two modes by setting a generic variable: release mode and debug mode. In debug mode, a test pattern generator is added together with a number of additional debug registers. The test pattern generator generates a predefined trigger sequence free of errors for debug purposes. In release mode the test pattern generator is removed, and the Channel A input is fed directly to the Channel A decoder. The data of the Channel B is fed to a deserializer and a hamming decoder. From the hamming decoder the signal is split into broadcast messages and individual addressed messages that are decoded by two dedicated modules. The sequence validator verifies the sequence of triggers and messages, and when a complete sequence has been received, the data is formatted in the CDH version 2 format and stored in a FIFO together with an event information word and an event error word.

The FIFO has optional parity encoding decided at compile time. All events, including software event, calibration events, and even erroneous events are stored by default.

In total, 14 events can be stored in the $FIFO^{24}$, but it is possible to constrain the FIFO to only store 8 events since this is the maximum depth of the multi event buffer in the ALTROS. If the readout logic reports to the trigger receiver that the multi event buffers are full or that the DDL is not ready to receive data, the trigger receiver can be configured to mask any additional incoming trigger sequences.

The Trigger Receiver Module handles errors that are related to message reception, illegal ordering of triggers/messages as well as timeout conditions. The errors are reported in the error and status words in the CDH FIFO. Additionally, counters count the number of message decoding errors, sequence related errors and single and double hamming errors. These counter values are accessible for the DCS.

5.2.5 Channel A decoding

A 3 bit shift register is used to decode the L0 and the L1a triggers. The L0 trigger is a single clock pulse which is reflected in the shift register as the pattern "010". The L1a trigger is two clock pulses in length, which is recognized as "011" in the shift register.

The shift register is sampled with falling edge of the clock. This ensures that the Channel A signal is stable when the data is sampled. The shift register pattern test is done on the rising edge of the clock.

5.2.6 Channel B decoding

The serial Channel B is sampled on falling edge of the clock to make sure that the signal is stable when analyzing it. When a start condition has been seen (Channel B goes from high to low), the FMT bit is analyzed and then the subsequent data is shifted in a shift register. To keep track of how many bits to shift, the shift register is initialized with a '1' in the least significant bit, and a complete message is received when this bit is recognized in bit location equal to message length + 1. An individually addressed message has a total length of 39 (32 data bits and 7 hamming bits), while a broadcast message has a total length of 13 (8 data bits and 5 hamming

²⁴ This has to do with the predefined sizes of the Xilinx FIFO core modules.

bits). The different messages are checked for hamming errors when they have been fully received. The hamming decoding is done with combinatorial LUTs to find and correct single bit errors. Double bit errors are reported.



Figure 5-3: Principal drawing showing the time windows for the L1a trigger and the L1a/L2a messages. The boundary L1a is given in yellow and the L1r is shown issued after a predefined timeout period. For L2a, all messages must be received within the time window for the trigger to be valid.

The broadcast messages are decoded into three single bit outputs: pre-pulse, eventcounter reset and bunchcounter reset, as given by Table D-24. The individually addressed messages are decoded into L1a, L2a, L2r and RoI messages (Table D-27, Table D-28, Table D-29 and Table D-30) and store the values in arrays of registers available for trigger sequence validation. This is quite area consuming, but since the content of the messages is to be verified later in the process, it is desirable to implement it like this. As the data is formatted to match the CDH, only information that is reported here could be stored. As it would make maintenance of the design more difficult, this is not currently done. In addition to the trigger messages, a Fee reset command is decoded from the individually addressed messages. This Fee reset has no effect on the Trigger Receiver Module, but is forwarded to the rest of the logic.

When decoding the messages, the order of the messages or the content of the data transmitted is not validated, but an error situation will be flagged if a message has not been completely received, i.e. when one or more of the data words are missing. Additionally any other address received than 0x1 - 0x8 will result in an unknown address warning.

5.2.7 Trigger Sequence Validation

The trigger sequence validation analyzes the timing and the order of the incoming triggers and messages. A principle sketch of the state machine for the sequence validation is given in Figure 5-4. A valid trigger sequence is always assumed starting with a L0 trigger, even if the pre-pulse precedes the L0 trigger. When validating a trigger sequence, the pre-pulse is only considered together with the CIT bit. Verifying the validity of a calibration sequence ends with an L1r, an L2a or an L2r, while a sequence ending with an L2 timeout is regarded as a definitive error situation. All of these trigger sequences, except for the first that has no accompanied data, can be selected to be stored in the FIFO and be sent to the DAQ system with or without payload.

When an L0 trigger is successfully decoded, all intermediate errors and status registers are cleared, and a counter is started that sets up legal time windows for the reception of the L1a trigger and the messages. See Figure 5-3. The borders of the time windows are configurable. The L1a trigger will always arrive at a defined time with respect to the L0 trigger, and hence the valid time window is one clock cycle wide. It is possible to set a configurable uncertainty region of up to ± 16 clock cycles, on which a boundary L1a trigger is reported. If no L1a triggers are received 15 clock cycles after the end of the uncertainty region, an L1r is issued and the trigger sequence is regarded as a finished and valid L0 sequence. Any L1a triggers outside of the legal time window (valid + boundary region) are masked, but still counted and reported as a spurious L1a trigger within the ongoing trigger sequence. A trigger sequence can also be considered started by as L1a trigger, but then a missing L0 trigger is reported in the event error word.

The state *Receive All Messages* is a wait state that waits until all messages have been received or the L2 time window is closed. As the L1a messages and the L2 messages may blend, the content of the L1a message is not evaluated until the sequence is considered to be finished. The time windows for the L1a message and the L2a/L2r message are per default set very wide. The L1a message is legal between 1 μ s and 500 μ s, while the L2 message is legal between 80 μ s and 500 μ s. These limits are configurable. An L2 timeout occurs if the L2a/L2r message has not been completely received by the end of the time window. An L1a message missing is reported if the same situation occurs for the L1a message. RoI is by default not considered and the decoding and time window are disabled, but can be enabled if needed. When a complete L2a/L2r message has been received, an L2a trigger or an L2r trigger is

generated, depending on the type of message received. The L2a and L2r triggers will be generated even if an error condition has occurred during the trigger sequence, as long as the severity of the error condition does not prohibit this.



Figure 5-4: State machine for the validation of the trigger sequences.

Immidiately after the L2a/L2r trigger is generated, the content of the messages is verified and decoded. From the content and type of L2 trigger, the start-of-run event and end-of-run event are generated as described in [37]. The end-of-run event is defined so all the programs handling the data readout on the DAQ LDC can be stopped in a coordinated and controlled manner, preventing failures and incomplete events at the end of the run. The start of run event is sent prior to configuration of the system so that a quick check of the data flow chain is performed for all the Readout Nodes.

5.2.8 Output to Internal Logic



Figure 5-5: Structure of the CDH FIFO.

At the arrival of an L2a/L2r trigger or an L2 timeout, the data from the recently finished trigger sequence is stored in the CDH FIFO. The trigger information received for one event is multiplexed into the FIFO, as shown in Figure 5-5. Altogether 9 words are stored in the FIFO per event: status information (Table D-20), error/warning information (Table D-21), and the CDH. The CDH is always transmitted prior to the event data to the DAQ system. As the content of the CDH is based entirely on information received from the TTC system, the trigger receiving logic formats its output as defined by the CDH. Word 0 of the CDH gives the data size. In all sub-detectors using the RCU, this word is simply set to zero, since the length of the payload is reported in the event trailer word instead. This information is not ready until the actual data has been read out, and then the CDH has already been sent to the DAQ. The content of the CDH FIFO for one single event is given in Table 5-3. The number of buffered events is visible to the other modules in the Readout Node. Depending on configuration, it is incremented when the L2a/L2r trigger or L2 timeout is received by the FIFO wrapper, giving as quick access to the data as possible. It is decremented when the last word of the event information is read. This makes the FIFO operate in a pipelined manner where both read and write is possible simultaneously, giving the best possible performance of the logic.

The event information word tells the Readout Node if the received trigger sequence is a physics trigger sequence, software trigger sequence or a calibration trigger sequence. It will also report if RoI is enabled, announced, received and if the given RCU is within this region²⁵. Additionally, information is given whether the event ended with an L2a/L2r trigger or an L2 timeout. This is important if several events have already been buffered in the multi event buffers. When then the readout process of the given event starts, the event manager can recapture needed details concerning

²⁵ Region of Interest is, at the time of writing, not considered to be used and it is not defined how the region of interest data should be interpreted. In the trigger receiver logic it is assumed that for TPC, one bit in the 36 bit RoI-word is set for each sector in the TPC. No such assumption has been made for PHOS, EMCal and FMD.

the buffered event. The include payload flag tells the event handler whether data should be sent together with the header to the DAQ system or not. If this flag is zero the CDH is transmitted without payload, and the pointer in the multi event buffers is only decremented. If this flag is 1 then a full readout process is started. The payload flag is set when L0 and L1a triggers have arrived within the legal time windows and the trigger sequence ends with a completely received L2a message. Other errors, such a spurious triggers and messages or incorrectly received messages, do not matter. The phase of the sampling clock at the arrival of the trigger that enables buffering of data (L0 for PHOS/EMCal, L1a for TPC/FMD) is also stored in the event information word. On the BusyBox these bits are always set to zero, as the BusyBox does not include a sampling clock.

| Word | Content | |
|-------------|---|--|
| Event Info | X"A95" "00" Event Information(17:0) | |
| Event Error | X"0" Event Errors(27:0) | |
| CDH-word 01 | version(7:0) "000" CIT RoC(3:0) ESR L1SwC "00" BCID(11:0) | |
| CDH-word 02 | X"00" OrbitID(23:0) | |
| CDH-word 03 | X"00" L2Class[47:24] / Detector[23:0] | |
| CDH-word 04 | X"0" CDH_error/status(15:0) Local_BCID(11:0) | |
| CDH-word 05 | L2Class[31:0] | |
| CDH-word 06 | Roldata[3:0] X"00" "00" L2Class[49:32] | |
| CDH-word 07 | Roldata[35:4] | |

Table 5-3: Data stored in the FIFO. First come two words with detailed information and status, and then all except the first word of the CDH follow.

The errors concerning the trigger sequence are reported in the error information word as given in Table D-21. The reported hamming errors are important, and are an indication of a problem with the optical link from the LTU to the Fee. Several other errors will most likely be reported as a consequence of hamming errors. The message content errors are a collection of errors that result from erroneous decoding of the messages. The consistency between the received data of the L1a message and the L2a message (if an L2a message has arrived) is verified, as well as the consistency concerning the types of triggers. The received bunchcrossing ID is verified. The number of bunches orbiting in the LHC is at all times 3563, and a bunchcrossing ID larger than this makes no sense. The other error situations are explained in Table D-21.

The CDH error/status word is generally defined in [36] and cited in Table D-22 including information how the CDH error/status word is generated in the Readout Node. The error and status information given in the first two words are more detailed than what is room for in the CDH, and the CDH error/status word is a combination of this information.

5.2.9 Registers

The handling and reporting of errors are very important for the trigger reception. All errors detected concerning a trigger sequence are reported as part of the event header, as described in section 5.2.8. In addition, it is of vital importance that the error and status information is available for monitoring by the DCS. The reception of the triggers must also be adaptable for possible future changes. For instance, it is foreseen that the expected latencies for the triggers and messages might change in the future, which is why this can be set as part of the configuration process of the system.

Table D-18 lists the available registers in the Trigger Receiver Module, of which some are for configuration and monitoring, and other strictly for debug purposes, for instance the registers that present data concerning the last received event. During normal runs, the trigger rate will be far too high to be able to make meaningful use of the debug registers. Some of the registers in Table D-18 are labelled *debug* and are only available in the debug version of the Trigger Receiver Module.

The important configuration registers that the DCS needs to set during configuration are the control register and the latency registers that defines the legal time windows of the trigger and messages. The definition of the control register is given in Table D-19, and the 16 least significant bits are control bits, while the remaining bits give status information. This register selects which type of events to be stored in the FIFO. By default, all events are chosen for storage. As the L1a message is optional for the LTU to send, any error situation regarding L1a message reception can be masked out. For backward compatibility, it is possible to assume that channel A only transmits L1a triggers²⁶.

Two command registers exist, one for doing a synchronous soft reset of the module, and one for clearing all counters and error/status information registers. The first is important in case the DCS needs to reset the data path without resetting the configuration of the logic.

When DCS are monitoring the trigger reception it is of high importance that a problem with the transmission is detected as early as possible. If the optical fiber for some reason is down, the DCS board automatically switches to a local clock, generated by a crystal on the board. The clock enables the DCS to still be able to

²⁶ The system was originally defined so that only L1a triggers were transmitted on Channel A, while the L0 was transmitted on a dedicated LVDS cable.

access the registers on the RCU Motherboard, and the important registers for detecting a dead link are the upper part of control register and the different error counters. The bunchcounter overflow bit in the control register is set if the bunchcounter is not reset by the broadcasted bunchcount reset message. This is the first indication of a dead link. If additionally the hamming error counters are zero the communication link is most likely broken or not connected. If the hamming error counters are counting fast, then it indicates that there is a problem with the synchronization between the clock and the Channel B link. Either way, a bunchcounter overflow flag must initiate a thorough check of the given RCU. This information should be handled by the DCS, making sure that the given RCU is removed from the DAQ equipment list until the error has been solved.

The DCS should also verify that there is coherence between the trigger counters. For instance should the number of level 1 triggers and level 2 triggers (accept and reject) always be equal during a run when the system is operating normally. The message error counter counts all errors related to decoding the messages (bit 5 - 9 in the error information word, Table D-21). The sequence error counter counts all errors related to sequence and timeouts (bit 10 - 24 in the error information word, Table D-21). These counters should be zero during normal operation.

5.2.10 Adaptions for the BusyBox



Figure 5-6: Wrapper that translates the BusyBox bus protocol to the RCU bus protocol.

120

There are two adaptations needed to make the Trigger Receiver Module fit for the BusyBox: 1) A bus wrapper that translates the definition of the bus from the internal RCU type to BusyBox type, and 2) Removal of the sampling clock phase calculation. The width of the external DCS databus is 16 bits for the BusyBux while it is 32 bits for the RCU. As the Trigger Receiver Module is originally designed for the RCU, it was additionally needed to address the 16 least significant bits and the 16 most significant bits of the complete data word separately. This is implemented as shown in Figure 5-6. The wrapper shifts the address bits one position to the left and adds a new least significant bit to select which part of the data word to read. Additionally the RCU bus protocol only has a write enable, while the BusyBox protocol includes a module enable and a read not write signal as seen in the figure. The second adaptation is done during compile time by setting the appropriate generic variable.

5.2.11 Radiation Tolerance Measures

As explained in the previous chapter, the Active Partial Reconfiguration of the RCU main FPGA does not vaccinate the logic against SEUs leading to functional errors, and to make full use of the Active Partial Reconfiguration, additional mitigation techniques are needed. The FIFO is therefore implemented with parity. It was originally planned to equip all state machines in the trigger receiver design with TMR, but due to the resource usage this was decided not to be implemented in the current version. The trigger receiver logic uses approximately 22 % of the logic blocks in the RCU main FPGA. This means that a functional error in the configuration memory that covers the trigger receiver logic will most probably make the readout chain fail. On the other hand, since timeout counters are implemented and the status of the Trigger Receiver Module is reset at the start of every trigger sequence, the logic will recover itself when the SEU has been corrected.

5.3 Trigger Distribution



Figure 5-7: Distribution of trigger signals from the Trigger System to the ALTROS.

In the Readout Node of the RCU firmware the decoded trigger is then handled by the Event Manager. This module supports three types of triggers: the triggers from the Trigger Receiver Module, software generated test triggers and hardware generated test triggers via dedicated input connector. The software L0/L1a triggers (depending on detector) are generated by issuing a command from either the DAQ system or the DCS. For hardware and software generated test triggers, the L2a trigger is then generated after a configurable time by the firmware. The Event Manager sends the triggers to the ALTRO interface that broadcasts them to the ALTROs on the FECs, see Figure 5-7.

5.4 Data Readout

5.4.1 The Readout Process

The readout sequence is extensively discussed in [13], and only a short summary is given here. Figure 5-8 shows a flowchart describing the overall readout procedure. The very first step is that the system needs to be configured properly. In that lies configuring all the ALTROs, configuring the Readout Node, and arming the Readout Node to be ready to receive triggers. The configuration also includes setting the readout mode, and when an L2a physics trigger arrives, the readout mode is evaluated. The readout mode can either be full readout mode or sparse readout mode. In full readout mode, all channels of all ALTROs are read out, while in sparse

readout mode only the channels that have buffered any data are readout. Sparse readout is covered in section 5.4.2. The L0/L1a trigger is broadcasted at arrival from the TTC system and makes the ALTROs start the buffering of data, while the L2a trigger can be broadcasted later than arrival time in case the Readout Node is already busy with a readout operation. The data is then waiting in the multi event buffer of the ALTRO until the Readout Node and the DDL is ready.

After the readout mode has been evaluated, it is checked whether the readout list memory is to be used or not. The readout list memory contains the order of which to read the channels by storing the address of each given channel in a specific order. In this way, it is possible to read the channels in the order that matches the physical layout of the detector; a design feature that improves the event reconstruction. The downside is that the data readout process might go slightly slower as it is not possible to take advantage of the readout network architecture by reading from both branches concurrently. If the readout list memory is decided not to be used, the readout is done in a way that optimizes the readout time.

After that the active channel list is checked. The active channel list tells the Readout Node whether the addressed channel should be read out or not. If the addressed channel is selected for readout, the availability of the data memories is checked. There are two data memories per branch, each able to store data generated by one single ALTRO channel. This enables the Readout Node to store data into one memory while simultaneously data is pushed on the DDL from the other memory. If the data memories are full, the system goes into a wait state. If the memories are free the Readout Node executes the channel readout command, and stores the result in the data memory.



Figure 5-8: Flowchart showing the principals of the overall readout procedure.

5.4.2 Board Controller in the Data Readout Process

Introduction

For both TPC and PHOS, the Board Controller plays a vital role in the readout process, as it is a key component in the implementation of sparse readout. Additionally, it always monitors the register transactions to the ALTROs to recognize the channel readout command. If this is seen it switches the ALTRO bus into readout mode, meaning essentially the ALTRO pushes data to the RCU on each clock cycle, using all 40 bits available on the bus[14].

TPC Board Controller - ALTRO Testmode

The ALTROs have serial test outputs that are connected to inputs on the Board Controller. These test outputs enable the possibility of reading the ALTRO raw data directly from the outputs of the ADCs, i.e. skipping the whole processing chain and multi-event buffer in the ALTROs. The ALTRO testmode is discussed in depth in [13].

TPC Board Controller - Sparse Readout

When buffering an event with zero suppression enabled in the ALTROs many channels will have no data. This is especially true for proton-proton events that have fairly low multiplicity. The amount of data stored can be verified by reading the pointer of the ALTRO memory, if the pointer is ≤ 1 , no data are stored for that given ALTRO channel. This is utilized to support a functionality named sparse readout. When doing a sparse readout only the channels that have actually buffered data are read out by the RCU and all the empty channels are skipped. This is done by the RCU sending a sparse readout command to the Board controller, which then immediately isolates the given FEC from the RCU. It becomes the bus master of the local ALTRO bus behind the GTL drivers, and scans the event length registers of all the ALTRO channels and builds a hitmap. The hitmap contains a 1 if the channel contains data and a 0 if the channel does not. When this is finished, the Board Controller waits for another command from the RCU that will make the Board Controller switch into ALTRO data readout mode. Using the full 40 bit buswidth it then transmits the hitmap to the RCU as though it was normal data from an ALTRO channel. The RCU then uses this hitmap information to select the channels to be read out. The sparse readout is discussed in depth in [13].

PHOS Board Controller - Sparse Readout

The Event Length Manager (see Figure 3-11) is the actual module implementing the sparse readout functionality as described in the previous chapter for the TPC. The Event Length Manager listens for two commands from the register block that are forwarded from the RCU: Scan Eventlength and Eventlength Readout. The first command starts to read the event length register of all the ALTRO channels. When the hitmap register is filled, it waits for the Eventlength Readout command on which it pushes the data to the RCU.

The sparse readout functionality has been modified only to match the different physical requirements of the PHOS FEC opposed to the TPC FEC. The PHOS FEC has only 4 ALTROS with address 0, 2, 3 and 4, where the TPC has 8 ALTROS with address from 0 - 7. The bit positions in the hitmap for the "missing" PHOS ALTROs are filled with zeros to keep the same structure of the hitmap register as for TPC. The pushing of the data uses a gated version of the rdoclk (system clock) as data strobe as this is done in the TPC version. Figure 5-9 shows how the gated clock is implemented in the Board Controller. Altera do not recommend to use gated clocks in an FPGA [38] since it is not a synchronous element. If used, it should only be in the cases where the target application requires power reduction. This is not the case for the Board Controller. The reason for using it here is to generate the 40 MHz data strobe from the 40 MHz system clock. Phase locked loops can not be used since the chosen Altera FPGA does not support this. The solution for gating the clock in the Board Controller follows the recommendation given in [38], and since it has been tested and verified working for TPC [13], the design is kept as is.



Figure 5-9: Excerpt from Altera Quartus RTL viewer of the logic driving the dstb. Some signal names are added for clarity

A better solution would be to generate the clock by using a register with an enable signal. This would reduce the data strobe frequency from 40 MHz to 20 MHz, but since only four 40 bit words of data are pushed, it would not give a considerable reduction to the sparse readout efficiency. This solution was not selected since it was not known at the time of design whether the RCU would support a data strobe with half the speed.

5.4.3 Event Building

The event building is done by the Data Assembler Module, as illustrated by Figure 5-10. When an L2a trigger initiates a readout, the CDH is read from the CDH FIFO in the Trigger Receiver Module via the Event Manager. The CDH is already formatted and ready to be pushed out on the DDL. When the 8 words of the CDH have been written the data is read from the memories in the ALTRO Interface Module, where the data is stored as 40 bits words. More information on the ALTRO data format is found in [14]. To be shipped on the DDL, the data must be formatted in 32 bit words to match the DAQ data format, see Table D-34.



Figure 5-10: Event Data Block. Data sent to the DAQ system is formatted with relevant information appended in the header and trailer words.

The trailer consists of two fixed trailer words and an optional number of words in addition to those. The two fixed trailer words define respectively: 1) The payload length, which specifies the number of 40-bit data words, and 2) the RCU address and the trailer length in 32-bit words. The payload length is the first word of the trailer and the RCU address and trailer length is part of the last word. The optional trailer words are divided into a parameter code and a parameter. The typical parameters are different error registers, readout lists of both branches that contain the bitmap defining the cards that actually have been read out, information concerning the samples, ALTRO configuration etc. Information of the samples contain the number of samples per channel, sampling frequency, and the phase of the level 0 / level 1

trigger relative to the sampling clock. More information of the TPC data format is found in [39] and in [14].

5.5 BusyBox

5.5.1 Basic Functionality

The BusyBox is covered in detail in [40], and only a short overview is given here. When the BusyBox receives an L0 or an L1a trigger (depending on for which detector it is used), it will assert the busy signal and wait for an L2 trigger. If the L2 trigger is a reject or it does not arrive in time the *busy* signal will be released. If the L2 trigger is an L2a trigger it is assumed that a buffer in the Fee has been occupied. The event ID from this trigger sequence is extracted and pushed into a local queue. This queue contains the event IDs of the events that are assumed to be somewhere in the system. Either they are stored in multi event buffers in the Fee or in the process of being transferred to the D-RORCs. In general, if the number of event IDs stored in this queue is equal to the total number of available multi-event buffers in the Fee (4) or 8) the busy signal is not released. To clear an event ID out of the queue it needs to be verified that all D-RORCs have received the data for this event. The BusyBox requests the latest received event ID from the D-RORCs, and if for some reason a D-RORC does not reply, the BusyBox will resend the same request. This is important to maintain the synchronization of the events between the BusyBox and the individual **D-RORCs**.

5.5.2 Firmware Architecture

An overview of the BusyBox is given in Figure 5-11. Surrounding the module given in the figure is a top level layer that instantiates Virtex-4 primitives such as IO buffers and a Digital Clock Manager for generating the two clocks that are used in the design. Most of the modules run on the normal 40 MHz system clock distributed by the TTCrx, while the interface to the D-RORCs uses a 200 MHz clock for oversampling the asynchronous serial bus protocol. Additionally, since the BusyBox is built with two FPGAs, the surrounding logic specifies in which FPGA the general BusyBox Module is to be used.

The DCS bus arbiter and address decoded interfaces the DCS bus and makes the internal modules accessible for the DCS board for monitoring and configuration of

the BusyBox, which is mostly done via the Control and Status Registers Module that interfaces the internal status and control signals. These signals are not shown on the figure but connect to most of the other modules. One important register which is held inside this module is the channel enable register that makes it possible to exclude channels used for the busy verification. One channel can be recognized as one RCU - D-RORC link.



Figure 5-11: Overview of the BusyBox firmware modules. Edited from [40]

The Receiver Module contains up to 120 serial receivers depending on a global generic that is set at the top level. The event ID and the channel number are coded into a custom serial bus protocol, and are buffered in the Rx Memory Module, and sent to the Event ID Verification Module for evaluation. The Transmitter Module only contains one serial encoder that will transmit on all channels to all D-RORCs that are not masked away by the channel enable register.

Of the output from the Trigger Receiver Module only the event ID, the triggers and the *busy* signal are of interest for the BusyBox. The event ID is read from the CDH FIFO immediately after receiving an L2a trigger and stored in a local queue in the Event ID Verification Module. The verification process then starts by sending requests to all D-RORCs via the Transmitter Module, and the incoming replies are buffered and processed. The triggers from the Trigger Receiver Module are used to increment the used buffer counter for each channel, while the *busy* is sent to the Busy Generator. The busy decision is in the end decided based on three parameters: the TTCrx ready from the TTC system, the *busy* from the Trigger Receiver Module, and the calculation of free multi event buffers in the Fee. The feature of including the TTCrx ready signal for busy generation is not described in [40]. It has been added at a later stage since it is a requirement of the TTC system that *busy* should be asserted when TTCrx ready is not.

5.6 Conclusion

The described version of the RCU main FPGA firmware has been extensively tested at the time of writing (August 2008). The main structure of the firmware is kept as described in [13], except that the Control Node and the Readout Node are more strongly separated than before. Earlier the Module and Safety Module were connected to the same bus as all the other modules. For the Control Node itself the new version does not differ much from the previous version, except that the Active Front-end Card List, that decided which FECs are powered, has been moved to the ALTRO Interface Module so that it is accessible for the DDL during configuration of the system.

The Readout Node is extensively updated. The Trigger Receiver Module as described (version 1.2) has been completely redesigned in respect to the version 1.0 that up until recently is the one that has been used. The Instruction Sequencer and the Result Unit have also been improved with among others detailed error and status information concerning the finished transactions.

The tests of the BusyBox have so far shown that it is stable and operating as it should, and only minor changes have been done to the final design as described in [40]. This implies that the trigger reception logic behaves as intended in a real life system and is backward compatible to work with RCU firmware version that has the older version of the trigger receiving logic.

The first large scale tests of the new RCU main FPGA firmware are promising. This is discussed in section 6.4.4.

Chapter 6

Verification and Testing

The system as described in the previous chapters has been extensively tested. This chapter describes the various tests and the outcome of them. As the previous chapters mainly have covered firmware designs, the chapter opens with a discussion on firmware simulation and modelling as it is performed on the various modules written. The focus is then moved to the hardware tests and irradiation tests of the different sub-systems described, before discussing the integration tests and commissioning periods of the TPC and PHOS detector.

6.1 Functional Verification of the Firmware Modules

6.1.1 Introduction

Functional verification verifies the design intent and can easily be classified as one of the most important tasks in the design cycle of a digital design. The main reason for this is that when the design is built and programmed to the hardware it is a black box, i.e. it is almost impossible to peer inside it to see if it behaves as intended. Tools exist for FPGAs that implement an internal logic analyzer in the chip (Xilinx Chipscope Pro, Altera signalTAP etc.), but even if these tools are of great help during the process of verification and testing, they can not replace a functional verification of the behavioural model in a computer simulator. The best way of doing functional verification is by using a testbench. A testbench is a piece of code that simulates the environment of which the design under test is supposed to be working in. The testbench is a completely closed system that has no inputs or outputs. It can be written in special firmware verification languages like systemC and systemVerilog, but it is also possible to build a relatively complete testbench in VHDL. Based on experience, a quality testbench should be able to:

- Verify the behaviour of the design automatically, i.e. without manually needing to verify all waveforms in the simulation.
- Be easily scalable for upgrades of the design under test module.

- Generate reproducible results each time it is run.
- Produce informative outputs such as log files and data output files where applicable.
- Produce a good code coverage score²⁷.
- Give an opportunity to simulate both the behavioural model as written in VHDL and the post place and route netlist generated by the designated tools.

These points coincide to a large extent with what is stated in [41], but to make a testbench obeying all these rules is time consuming. Therefore it may seem unnecessary if the design is not very complex. However, what often is the case when a proper testbench structure is missing, even for simple designs, is that the designs have more bugs and correcting the bugs is less efficiently done.

For all the designs described in the previous chapters a testbench structure like described has been developed. All testbenches that are used for simulation of the modules are created in VHDL. The testbenches use a package where a number of procedures and functions are defined. These procedures and functions can do bus transactions on the DCS bus, and verify the validity afterwards. In addition, there are functions for creating log messages both in the simulation prompt and in a log file. A clock generator is also created that generates a 40 MHz clock signal, a stimuli trigger and a sample trigger. The triggers are used to simulate setup and hold times in the external interfaces. The clock and triggers can be enabled and disabled, which is very useful as one can then stop the simulation automatically since no more actions are taking place in the simulation. It is preferred that the bus master of any system is implemented using procedures in a VHDL construct called a process. Any slaves in the testbench are preferrably made as simulation models that respond to the impulse from the design under test (DUT). These simulation models are often difficult to design since it normally is a divergence between how the designer thinks the simulated device is behaving and how it really is behaving. Some manufacturers offer downloadable simulation models with their devices, but this is unfortunately not very common.

By setting a generic variable, the post place and route model can be simulated instead of the behavioral model. Post place and route simulation is a very time consuming

²⁷ The code coverage score is produced by a designated software tool or a simulator that supports this feature, for instance Mentor Graphics Questasim that is used for the presented work.

task. Depending on the complexity of the logic to be tested, it can be several orders of magnitudes slower than simulating the behavioral model. Thus, having an already verified and automatic testbench structure that can be used in both types of simulations is of great advantage. If done properly, the resulting log file should hold enough information to know that the design is behaving as intended, both when simulating the behavioral model and the post place and route model. Another advantage is that it is possible to run the post place-and-route simulation while doing something else and verify the output afterwards.



6.1.2 Testbench for the Trigger Receiver Module

Figure 6-1: Testbench for Trigger Receiver Module.

The testbench for the Trigger Receiver Module is sketched in Figure 6-1. The Trigger Receiver Module is the DUT. The DCS interface as described in section 3.5.2 is added so that the functions and procedures can be used directly towards the internal RCU bus structure of the trigger receiver. This also means that the DCS interface is simulated in context of how it will be used, in addition to the specific simulation done separately. Additionally to the DUT, there is a Producer and a Responder Module. The Producer Module simulates the Channel A and Channel B interface. The Responder Module simulates the internal logic interfaces, the reading of the FIFO etc. The Producer also forwards the generated stimuli to the responder. In this way, the Responder can verify the content that is produced by the Trigger Receiver Module. The testbench is controlled by the process p_tb. This process implements the different test cases by using the defined procedures in the testbench package. Additional procedures have been developed to simplify the structure of the process and to

control the producer. The producer can be told to send correct trigger sequences or trigger sequences with various error situations so that all the error handling of the Trigger Receiver Module is validated.

The testbench runs through the various defined test cases to have a good coverage (more than 95% branch coverage) of all the code in DUT and writes errors, warnings and notes to a log file.



6.1.3 Testbench for the PHOS Board Controller

Figure 6-2: Testbench for the PHOS Board Controller

The same testbench package and structure is applied to the PHOS Board Controller. The p_stimuli process does the DCS bus transactions that define the test cases to a synthesized simulation model of the RCU main FPGA firmware. This is done primarily since it is then certain that the ALTRO bus and the FC bus protocols are implemented correctly. Secondly, it helps adapting the testbench package for the DUT.

As the ALTRO bus is shared between 4 ALTROs and the Board Controller on the FEC, an ALTRO simulation model has been added²⁸. It is also possible to set a

²⁸ The ALTRO simulation model is the work of the EP/ED group at CERN and is downloaded from http://ep-ed-alice-tpc.web.cern.ch. It has been slightly modified to match the testbench environment.

generic amount of FECs connected to the RCU simulation model. Additionally, there is a simple simulation model of the DACs and the ADCs²⁹ on the FEC. This testbench ensures that all possible features of the Board Controller design are tested thoroughly.

6.1.4 Testbench for the RCU support FPGA firmware

The testbench involves a complete simulation model for the RCU Flash Memory Device³⁰ and a very simple simulation model for the selectMAP interface that gives a few responses to the data/control lines of the selectMAP bus. For the selectMAP mode and Flash mode operation of the firmware, it has only been verified that the output is a direct map of the input as intended.

6.1.5 Testbench for the DCS board firmware.

The testbench for the DCS board firmware involves only verification of the RCU Communication Module, since this is the only module designed specially for TPC/PHOS. As this firmware implements the DCS bus master, a complete set of procedures has been written that simulates the ARM stripe interface. One DCS Bus Slave Module has been attached that includes available registers, and also the post place and route simulation model of the RCU support FPGA has been added so that the Flash interface can be verified with the correct delay model that is introduced by this device.

6.2 Hardware Tests of the Firmware Modules

6.2.1 Trigger Receiver Module

The hardware verification is performed with an RCU setup and an LTU running a CTP emulator software[9], see section 6.3. A special design for the RCU main FPGA has been used where the Trigger Receiver Module is synthesized in debug mode. The

²⁹ The ADC simulation model is an I²C slave simulation model developed by Richard Herveille (richard@asics.ws) and John Sheahan (jrsheahan@optushome.com.au) and is downloaded from http://www.opencores.org/projects/i2c/. The model has been slightly modified to match the testbench environment.

³⁰ The RCU Flash Memory Device simulation model is downloaded from http://www.macronix.com/.

DCS interface as described in section 3.5.2 is included in the test design and hence is also then verified.

The CTP emulator is used to send sequences, and DCS board scripts have been made to setup the Trigger Receiver Module to match the LTU, read all interesting registers per event sent and read the FIFO via the DCS board. The DCS scripts can be configured to generate a log file. The log files are used to verify that the content and the behaviour are as expected. Various trigger sequences have been tested with the CTP emulator, including for instance normal physics trigger sequences, start of run and end of run sequences.

In addition, a long term stress tests and functional tests have been done as part of the BusyBox testing as described in [40].



6.2.2 PHOS Board Controller

Figure 6-3: Board Controller test setup in the laboratory at the University of Bergen.

The design has been functionally verified in hardware with a setup consisting of one RCU and, due to the very limited number of spare FECs, only one FEC connected to position 9 on RCU branch A (see Figure 6-3). On the PHOS module, the GTL backplanes connect to the RCU using flat ribbon cables of length ~40 cm, but on the test setup these were replaced by two small mezzanine cards. Cases that have been functionally verified are amongst others ALTRO bus communication (both to Board Controller and ALTRO), FC bus communication, DAC communication, ADC

communication, handling of Hamming errors and generation of the interrupt signal to the RCU.

In addition a stress test has been performed of the FC bus interface and the ALTRO bus interface. On the test setup, more that one million transactions on the ALTRO bus went without errors, and more than a quarter of a million transmissions (4 bytes each) on the FC bus did the same.

On the complete PHOS module #1 it has been functionally verified that FC bus communication works with more than one FEC attached and powered. Concerning the ALTRO bus protocol, certain timeout situations happen at an approximate rate of maximum a few percent, normally less, of all transactions. It has been verified that the reason for these timeout situations is that the Board Controller does not recognize a valid address when an error occurs. This has been tested with a various number of FECs powered. Even with only one FEC powered, which is an equal situation to the one in the laboratory except for the flat cable bus extension, the rate of failing transactions is of the same order of magnitude.

In March 2008 tests were performed on PHOS module $#2^{31}$ where register transactions were done to both Board Controller and ALTRO on all connected FECs on both branches. Additionally, a test of data readout was performed. The Board Controller version used in these tests was version 3.4, which was considered to be stable and free of all possible child deceases. The register transaction tests using the ALTRO bus gave approximately the same result as the test carried out on PHOS module #1, but it was seen that the number of failing transactions varied depending on the position of the FEC on the backplane. Where some FECs had a failure rate of 0.1 %, others were close to 50%, which is unacceptable. The registers transaction test using the Front-end Control Bus, gave 3 failing transactions out of a total of 14336 transactions (1024 transactions to each of the 14 cards on branch A). The data readout test was done by first writing a ramp to the ALTRO pedestal memory, and then reading it back in data readout mode. Evaluation of these tests showed a data decoding error rate of approximately 0.5%. Because of this, the firmware was evaluated once more and a minor detail that might have caused glitches on the GTL driver signals was found. This was corrected and a new version was released (version 3.5 - see appendix D.4.2). New tests were performed, but no real improvement was

³¹ Hardware tests on PHOS module #2 were performed by Per Thomas Hille (perthi@fys.uio.no) and Dieter Röhrich (dieter.rohrich@ift.uib.no)

seen because of the upgrade, which was taken as an indication that the problem is not related to the BOrd Controller firmware.

An independent test of the PHOS backplanes was carried out at the University of Oslo in February 2008 [42]³². The results showed that the flat ribbon cable extension clearly imperils the quality of the GTL signals due to the impedance mismatch between the cable and the PCB bus. The GTL transceivers and bus should ideally see a uniform 75 Ω transmission path. However, due to the lack of a ground reference on the cable its characteristic impedance is measured to be around 135 Ω . This degradation of the GTL signals might explain the reason for the failing transactions. On the test setup in the laboratory at the University of Bergen where the flat ribbon cables were replaced by the mezzanine cards, the Board Controller has already from version 3.1 appeared 100% stable.

6.2.3 RCU support FPGA

Functional test with special test design for Xilinx

A complete functional test has been performed on the RCU support FPGA firmware, where all features have been verified working. For this test, a special Xilinx design making use of LUT RAMs has been designed. When doing Active Partial Reconfiguration, LUT RAMs should normally be avoided since the content of a LUT RAM is stored in configuration memory elements. This is exactly why it is perfect for a functional verification of the Active Partial Reconfiguration. It is in this way possible to inject errors in a controlled environment. The LUT RAM in the test design is by default set to zero and is possible to address from the DCS board. When doing frame by frame readback, verification and correction, the number of errors in the configuration memory matches the number of '1's written to the LUT RAM. The value stored in the LUT RAM is at the same time cleared. This test gives the first proof of concept of the Active Partial Reconfiguration solution, and is a useful base to have prior to testing the design in a radiation environment.

³² Tests of PHOS GTL backplanes were performed by Bernhard Skaali (t.b.skaali@fys.uio.no) and Geir Frode Raanes Sørensen (g.f.r.sorensen@fys.uio.no), University of Oslo, Norway.

Tests performed with RCU main FPGA firmware dated 19.06.06 This Xilinx design includes version 1.0 of the described Trigger Receiver Module and a different DCS interface. The tests were done in a laboratory environment, hence is it expected that no SEUs should be detected. The following tests were done:

- Monitoring the health status of the TPC FECs. Three ~12 hour runs were made: One reference run without any active operation on the RCU support FPGA, one run with scrubbing and one run with frame by frame read back, verification and correction. As expected, no SEUs were detected by the RCU support FPGA. The values read out (temperatures, analogue voltage/current, and digital voltage/current) did not show any significant divergence between the runs.
- *Reading out data using full data path including DATE on PHOS setup with one single FEC.* Software triggers were used and three runs with 200 software triggers each where done (same as above). The data was not investigated since it is not likely that the reconfiguration should affect the data quality. All triggers were counted in the RCU Xilinx FW and seen by DATE. No SEUs were detected by the RCU support FPGA as expected.

6.2.4 DCS board Firmware

The hardware testing of the DCS board has been divided into testing the three modes of operation of the RCU Communication Module: the normal operation mode, selectMAP mode and Flash mode. The testing has been performed by scripts on the DCS board. The Flash mode has been stress tested by writing two files of size 3.3 MB and 4.0 MB to location 0x0 and 0x200000 respectively. Following each writing the content of the Flash Memory Device was read back and verified. The Flash Memory Device was erased between each cycle. 50 cycles were executed with no errors detected. The test lasted for about 6.5 hours.

Finally it is worth mentioning that the DCS board with the discussed firmware has been used for the RCU and the BusyBox at TPC, PHOS, EMCal and FMD for several years. Some minor problems have been found during this time that have been taken care of. The changes and bugfixes are documented in the version change log in appendix section D.2.2.

6.3 Irradiation and Fault Injection Tests

Irradiation tests have been performed for several reasons. Firstly it was done to characterize the different devices used in the Fee to decide whether they would withstand the radiation environment and behave normally. Results from these tests have been published in [7, 8]. One test was done to verify the operation of the design at system level. This was performed at the cyclotron at the The Svedberg Laboratory in Uppsala, Sweden in 2005, and involved both the data path and the Fee DCS. Finally, irradiation tests have been done to verify the effect of the Active Partial Reconfiguration solution. This has also been done by the use of fault injection. Fault injection simulates the effect that the radiation environment has on the FPGA, by randomly injecting bit flips in the configuration memory of the Xilinx by a custom made software tool³³.

The system level irradiation test were done on a complete Fee chain and the number of errors found in the test are in an order of magnitude of what can be expected from earlier tests[7]. But even if the test gave the expected error rate, it has to be taken into consideration that the resulting statistics were not very high and only indicates how the system will operate in the ALICE radiation environment. With no mitigation techniques it can be expected to have one functional failure per hour on all 216 RCUs in the TPC. The approximate same number applies for the DCS board. The Active Partial Reconfiguration logic was not ready at the time of the test, so the effect of this feature could not be tested.

The Active Partial Reconfiguration solution has been tested in two ways³⁴. 1) Irradiation tests at Oslo Cyclotron Laboratory and 2) Fault injection tests in the laboratory. In both tests a specially designed firmware for the Xilinx has been used that enables the possibility to test the effect of the Active Partial Reconfiguration when no mitigation techniques have been applied at design level and when a commonly used mitigation technique (TMR) has been applied. The preliminary results as given here are from [43].

What can be concluded from the irradiation tests is that the Active Partial Reconfiguration alone can not prevent functional errors from occurring, but together

³³ This tool is designed by Ketil Røed (ketil.roed@ift,.uib.no), University of Bergen/Bergen University College and runs on the DCS board.

³⁴ The irradiation tests and fault injection tests quantifying the effect of the Active Partial Reconfiguration has been performed by Ketil Røed (ketil.roed@ift.uib.no). The complete results from these will be published in the near future.

with conventional mitigation techniques it reduces the number of functional errors to a negligible level. The fault injection test showed that when applying both Active Partial Reconfiguration and TMR, it took in average 4 times more SEUs to create a functional error than when doing no action at all. Active Partial Reconfiguration alone did not make any measurable difference. It was on the other hand seen that when doing no action at all the current consumption was steadily rising, but when applying Active Partial Reconfiguration it immediately stabilized at nominal level. This might imply that even though Active Partial Reconfiguration alone does not help reducing the rate of functional failures, it can have an impact on the lifetime of the components. Even so, both tests clearly emphasize the need of implementing mitigation techniques on a design level in addition to doing Active Partial Reconfiguration.

6.4 System Integration Tests and Commisioning

6.4.1 Introduction

Both the TPC detector and the PHOS detector have been through long and extensive installation and commissioning periods where the electronics and the detector itself have been tested and characterized. This section will give a short summary of the outcome of these tests in perspective of the electronics. One important note is that up until recently the tests have been performed with the RCU main FPGA firmware version from June 2006 (version 1.0). This version includes a much simpler version of the Trigger Receiver Module than described in this thesis. A short summary on tests performed with the new RCU firmware version as described in this thesis is given in section 6.4.4.

6.4.2 TPC Electronics Commisioning

The installation and commissioning of the TPC have lasted from early 2006 and are still ongoing. During pre-commissioning phase, two and two sectors were tested at a time using different kinds of triggers distributed by the TTC system. The tests included testing of electronics and calculation of pedestal values, verification of gain amplification factor, stability testing and overall verification by using laser tracks in the TPC. The installation and pre-commissioning phase are discussed in more details in [13]. During the testing it has been verified that the RCU is moving data with the rates as expected. The DCS has also been extensively tested during pre-

commissioning where the Fee have been monitored, exercising the Fee DCS from intercom layer and down. It has been verified that the monitored values are stable except for the digital current and the temperatures, which both rise within acceptable boundaries during an event readout when the traffic on the FEC increases.

The testing, calibration and characterization of the TPC continued in the commissioning phase where the complete A side or C side has been powered at the same time. These tests have included the BusyBox that has proven to perform according to specification. It has also been seen that the DCS scaled well with minor adjustments, and many of the PVSS panels in the supervisory layer have been implemented (see Figure 3-10 and Figure 4-11).

6.4.3 PHOS commisioning

Only one PHOS module is installed from the very start of LHC. The installation and pre-commissioning for PHOS module #1 started in 2005. During pre-commissioning phase the PHOS module #1 has been calibrated using led triggers, cosmic triggers and electron beam. In this way the High Voltage APD bias settings could be calculated to set the gain correctly on each channel. The electronics have been tested, which include data readout and trigger generation. The DCS monitoring was not possible to test, because of a problem in PHOS concerning the FC bus (see section 3.6.7). Stability testing using cosmic trigger and data has been done for a long period of time. The RCU main FPGA firmware used is from December 2006, which is the TPC firmware with minor adaptations to make it more suitable for PHOS. For PHOS, it is a problem that this firmware version is implemented with version 1.0 of the Trigger Receiver Module. This does not support level 0 triggers via the TTC system. This problem was bypassed by PHOS implementing its own hardware level 0 trigger input.

PHOS module #1 was originally planned to be lowered in the ALICE cavern end of 2007, but it had to be postponed due to the failing readiness of the module. The extensive testing period showed several problems. A too high number of dead channels and bad channels, i.e. channels with too high noise level, were detected. Noise problems were also a major issue in the electronics for trigger generation, and digital errors in the data stream were experienced at a rate that was not acceptable. Because of all the problems detected it was decided to open PHOS module #1 for a more thorough inspection (The PHOS modules are sealed when fully commissioned). When disassembling the module, a problem with condensation and corrosion of the electronics in the connection point between the cold and warm zone was discovered.

Together with the problems found with the flat cable extensions as discussed in section 6.2.2 this might explain some of the reasons for the problems with PHOS module #1.

Commissioning phase of PHOS module #2 started late 2007 and equivalent tests have been performed of this module showing a much improved behaviour compared to PHOS module #1, even though the RCUs are still connected to the backplanes via flat ribbon cables. The rate of errors was found to be at an acceptable level, hence it was decided to include PHOS module #2 from the start of LHC. To prevent problems with condensation, the cold zone will not be cooled to the nominal operative temperature of -25 °C until it is ensured that the module is airtight. This means that at the start up LHC, PHOS will have a slightly degraded energy resolution since the light yield goes down with increasing temperature.



6.4.4 Tests involving RCU firmware version 2.0



The first tests of the RCU firmware as described in this thesis (labelled RCU firmware version 2.0) are being performed at the time of writing and the first results are very promising. One test performed is to verify the validity of the CDH. In this

³⁵ Dominik Fehlker (dominik.fehlker@uib.no), University of Bergen

test 48 RCUs participated in a 30 minute long run with a trigger rate of 180 Hz. Altogether 100000 events were read out and the CDH were analyzed automatically at the level the GDC, and no failures were seen at all[44].

In addition, full readout and sparse readout have been tested and verified working for the TPC. A screenshot showing a cosmic event in TPC successfully taken with RCU firmware version 2.0 is shown in Figure 6-4.

The DCS board Control Engine and FeeServer have been adapted to match the new register mapping and features of the new RCU firmware version. No updates were needed for the DCS board firmware. All tests done so far have shown that the Fee DCS are running smoothly together with the new RCU main FPGA firmware, and no problems are yet discovered.

Preliminary tests with Active Partial Reconfiguration in the lab show that it is possible to operate the RCU firmware normally while reading frames continuously. As expected, no SEUs have been detected.
Chapter 7

Error Handling on a System Level

This chapter discusses what can be done on a system level to reduce the effect of errors in the electronics. This can be all sorts of errors including transaction errors, electrical errors, errors due to noise in the system, radiation related functional errors etc. This chapter focuses mainly on the latter; as such errors will occur several times during the lifetime of the experiment.

7.1 Introduction

In a large scale system such as the ALICE detector, errors in the electronics of different kinds are bound to happen over the lifetime of the project. These can for instance be errors due to electrical noise, physical errors, transmission errors or radiation related errors. The errors can be divided into permanent errors and non-permanent errors. In this context a permanent error is an error that needs a full system reset or even power down to be cleared, while a non-permanent error can be cured while keeping the system online. If the errors can not be completely prevented, as is the case with the radiation related errors, it is of high importance to make the design such that the error should not have spreading consequences outside of the sub-system where it occurred.

7.2 Errors in the RCU main FPGA

7.2.1 Consequences

The RCU main FPGA is divided into two separate nodes, the Readout Node and the Control Node. The severity of the error is decided by which node the error occurs in. Errors in the Readout Node can lead to loss of data while an error in the Control Node most likely will prevent the operator from seeing the status of the system. The first can clearly be defined as the most severe error.

The consequence of an error in the Readout Node is that loss of data is almost certain to occur. If for instance a channel B transmission error occurs resulting in a double hamming error, the trigger information might not be successfully generated and the RCU will send data without payload. In other words, one event will be lost for one RCU. The RCU may still be able to generate and send a CDH, which means that the DAQ system gets all the event fragments and the run is not aborted. A worse situation can occur if there is a radiation related error blocking the readout path for up to 150 ms (the time it takes until it is corrected – worst case). If the consequence of this is that the RCU is freezing, maybe as many as approximately 130 events are prevented from being sent to the D-RORC. The BusyBox will raise the *busy* flag to the LTU when the buffers on the Fee are considered to be full, which is after 4 events (or 8 events, depending on number of samples). A fatal consequence of this might be that one RCU failing will block the whole TPC from sending data, or – even worse – the DAQ system automatically aborting the run due to missing event fragments.

As mentioned in section 3.4.10, around 4 radiation related functional failures are expected per run if no mitigation techniques are applied. Roughly estimated, 40% of the resources in the RCU main FPGA are related to logic directly involved in trigger and data path (Trigger reception, ALTRO interface, Data Assembler and SIU interface). This gives around 1.5 functional errors in this logic per run, of which the consequence is hard to estimate until measured. However, it is seen that occurrences of functional failures that block the data readout are likely.

The consequence of an error in the Control Node is not as fatal as it is for the Readout Node. Transaction errors on the FC bus can happen, but these are most likely not of a permanent nature. If it is permanent, it is a FC bus slave that is stuck. This is discussed in section 7.4. If an SEU induces a radiation related error in the Control Node, the worst case is that one must wait until the error has been corrected before being able to access the logic.

7.2.2 Proposed Solutions for Error Handling

There are many ways of making the design more robust against errors. Some are already implemented in the design, such as hamming coding of the trigger information. This prevents transmission errors from having a negative effect on the design. Additionally, it is wise to implement the following:

• *Timeout counters on tasks imminent to hang.* Having timeout counters on these tasks will greatly improve the possibility the design has to recover from an error situation.

- *Soft resets.* A soft reset will reset the state of a design (i.e. bring all state machines back to idle) without changing its configuration in case an error has led the system to hang. This is an external recovery solution, and is dependent on the next point given.
- *Meaningful Status/Error registers:* By implementing error/status registers it is easy for the overlying control system to identify the occurrence and location of an error situation. It is also easier for the DCS to do the correct exception handling.
- Safe and One-Hot state machine implementation. One-hot state machine encoding means that there are more possible illegal states than legal states and that one need at least two bit flips to go from one legal state to another, which is not very likely as a result of an error. A safe state machine is a state machine of which all illegal states will be passed into idle state. Any synthesizer tool will normally support both these settings.
- *EDAC codes on the data stored in memory.* For instance hamming coding all data would ensure that radiation related errors in the BRAM would not endanger the quality of the data. A different approach for securing the content in the BRAM is given by Xilinx in [45], where the BRAM is constantly refreshed.
- *Redundancy of vital parts of the design:* Especially for radiation related errors, implementation of TMR will improve the behaviour of the design, as shown by the tests presented in section 6.3.

It is of high importance to keep the design from freezing at a given state because of an unexpected error situation. By the use of timeout counters, the design notices this on its own and returns to idle. Additionally, the DCS board should be able to verify the status of the RCU main FPGA and, if needed, do a soft reset that sets the different failing parts back to idle.

Based on the results of the irradiation tests and fault injection tests (section 6.3), it seems clear that in order to reduce the risk of functional failures it would be wise to implement the complete design with TMR³⁶, by making three exact copies of the

³⁶ For some Xilinx devices, this can be done with TMRTool that is a special tool developed by Xilinx for implementing TMR in Xilinx Devices

⁽currently supported: Virtex-4, Virtex-II and Virtex): http://www.xilinx.com/ise/optional_prod/tmrtool.htm

firmware and add voters on all outputs. This is also recommended by Xilinx for space applications where Xilinx devices are used[46]. The risk of radiation related errors would then be significantly lowered, and the need for other mitigation techniques would have been toned down. Unfortunately the current hardware solution prohibits this solution because of area restrictions in the chosen FPGA.



Figure 7-1: Suggestion on how to increase the radiation tolerance for the RCU main FPGA design.

A less area consuming alternative is shown in Figure 7-1, where only the modules directly involved in the generation and sending of the CDH are protected with TMR. In the sketch this is simplified to show the whole Readout Node as TMR protected. As already discussed, not sending the CDH to the DAQ system will prematurely abort the run. This means that given the area constraints of the RCU main FPGA, the main focus when applying mitigation techniques must be to ensure that the CDH is always correctly received and sent. If the data are temporarily corrupted or if no data is submitted is not important, as long as the system is able to recover.

7.3 Errors in the Trigger and Data Path

As described in section 7.2.1, a consequence of an error in the Readout Node in the RCU main FPGA is that the BusyBox flags the *busy* line to the CTP at false conditions. Or even more severe: The DAQ aborts the run because of an error that is of temporary nature. Implementing the RCU main FPGA firmware as described in the previous section would reduce the risk of such errors, but because of the amount of devices involved, this type of error situation can easily come from other sources as

well. The severity of such error situations means that ideally it would be best to handle them online as early as possible.

A possible solution for this is to implement DCS status monitoring of the BusyBox. As the DAQ system is completely data driven and exists in parallel with the DCS, the DCS can not monitor if the event fragments arrive at the DAQ directly. But it can be done on the BusyBox. The BusyBox has registers that gives the status of each channel. The channel is directly mapped to a RCU – D-RORC link, and this means that the BusyBox will be the first device to notice if one or more event fragments are missing. If one channel reports that the buffers of the Fee are close to full while all the rest of the Fee buffers are empty, it is a clear indication that the given channel is erroneous.

When the LHC starts it can be verified if this is a problem occurring with an unacceptable frequency. If so, the failing Fee system should preferably be removed during runtime from the channel enable list to ensure correct *busy* assertion. Additionally, this node should be removed from the DAQ equipment list so that the run is not automatically aborted³⁷. The BusyBox DCS reports this situation up in the hierarchy, so that either the operator or the DCS automatically verifies the status of the failing Fee. If it is a physical error, the Fee should be kept removed from the DAQ equipment list and the BusyBox channel enable list for the rest of the run, and then debugged offline. If the cause of problem is a radiation related error, the Fee can safely be included in the run when the error is corrected.

7.4 Errors in the Fee DCS

As the Board Controllers on all FECs are SRAM based FPGAs, they are susceptible to radiation related errors. If an error occurs in one of the two communication interfaces to the RCU, it might actually block the data traffic of the branch that the failing FEC is connected to. The data traffic can be the ALTRO data or the health monitoring data depending on what interface that experiences a problem. The only way to cure such an error is to repower the failing board. If the error paralyses the FC bus it can be very difficult to identify which board is signalling the interrupt as it is hard to communicate with the FECs while the ALTRO interface is busy doing data

³⁷ Due to the DAQ architecture it is currently not possible to automatically during runtime update the DAQ equipment list.. It can only be altered by manual intervention when no runs are ongoing.

readout. If the FC bus still is operating normally, the different status registers of the Board Controller must be read and evaluated. But even these registers might not show any irregularities if the error is radiation related. The consequence of not finding the source of the error is that all boards must be powered down.

The DCS board needs to handle the situation that the RCU does not respond or that it responds incorrectly, which can be the effect of a functional error in the Control Node. The DCS should then use the information given by the RCU support FPGA. If this reports an SEU some time afterwards, the cause of the error is already found. If the place and route process is constrained so that the logic related to readout and logic related to control are in separate locations on the FPGA, it is also possible to pinpoint the module that has experienced an error.

If the DCS board itself is failing, a controlled reboot from the higher level DCS might get it running again depending on the severity of the error. If the error kills the Ethernet communication, the DCS board must by itself know that it is in an erroneous state and try to reboot itself³⁸.

7.5 Conclusion

As discussed in this chapter, errors can and will happen during the lifetime of the project, and having proper exception handling is important. Some possible error situations are discussed, and some suggestions on how to deal with them are given. It is important to have a DCS that quickly responds to error situations. It should be emphasized that when building a state-of-the-art system such as the ALICE detector, it is impossible to foresee all kinds of error situations. The first runs with LHC beam will give valuable information on what error situations can be expected, and then it will be easier to decide on solutions that minimize the effects of them.

³⁸ The DCS boards are designed with an option of connecting neighboring boards so that each DCS board can control its nearest neighbor and reboot it, upload new data to the Flash Memory Device etc. This feature is used in TRD, and even if the software and firmware are available, this option was at some point decided not to be used for TPC, PHOS, FMD and EMCal and the special cables that are needed are not connected and even not made slits for in the cooling plates of the RCUs.

Chapter 8

Conclusion and Outlook

This chapter gives a short summary of the work covered by this thesis.

The ALICE detector consists of several sub-detectors, of which TPC and PHOS are two. This thesis has focused on the Fee for TPC and PHOS, since these two detectors share many of the electronic components, of which one of the main components is the Readout Control Unit (RCU). The RCU consists of a Motherboard that connects to a given number of FECs from where it receives the data during data readout. These data are shipped out from the RCU through a SIU add-on card. In addition a DCS board is sitting on the RCU Motherboard, monitoring and controlling the state of the system. The RCU has been put in context with the TTC system, the DCS and the DAQ system, where especially the two first have importance for the work presented. The work has concentrated on trigger reception and handling at the Fee as well as the Fee DCS.

Additionally, the BusyBox has been presented. This device is important for preventing the Fee from being flooded by triggers if the rate is higher than what can be handled. The trigger receiving logic and the DCS board logic of the BusyBox are inherited from the RCU design.

Special focus has been given to the challenges that are related to the radiation environment that the electronics are operating in, and it has been seen that for all designs presented there is a trade off between the constraints given area and timing and the amount of mitigation techniques that are included.

A state-of-the-art solution for correcting radiation related errors in the configuration memory of a Xilinx Virtex-II Pro FPGA without interrupting the operation of the firmware has been presented. It has also been verified that in order to prevent errors in the configuration memory for having measurable effect on the firmware itself, this feature is not enough. Standard mitigation techniques need to be applied as well. A discussion has been done concluding that minimum the modules directly related to the trigger and data path should be protected against radiation effects. As the RCU main FPGA firmware is already using most of the resources in the FPGA without applying mitigation techniques, a fair chance exists that certain parts of the firmware

design must be redesigned in order to make space for implementation of TMR of the modules involved in generating and sending the CDH to the DAQ system.

All designs as presented have been extensively tested and are proven to behave according to specification. Future upgrades might still be needed as soon as the LHC is commissioned, as new requirements will most probably unveil when this happens. This can especially be foreseen concerning the reception and decoding of the triggers since there is room for sending a lot more information via the TTC system than what is utilized today.

A main focus during the design path of the different designs has been to make them possible to support, maintain and upgrade them in the future, see Appendix C. The VHDL code is well documented and easy to read. All projects have generic testbench structures so that upgrades and changes can be done with as little effort as possible. A strict version numbering system has been used, and each version has been published together with a design document on a Wiki Webpage[47]³⁹. In addition, Concurrent Versioning System (CVS) has been applied during the development phase. This systematic design methodology has not only ensured high quality designs with few errors, but made sure that the errors can quickly be corrected. As the designs have been thoroughly documented, verified and tested, the process of integrating designs in the large scale system. The Bergen Wiki Webpage has been, and will continue to be, a great tool in this process since it gives one designated location that collects all the information necessary for both users and future designers.

³⁹ The Wiki Webpage has been set up by Matthias Richter (Matthias.richter@ift.uib.no) and Sebastian Bablok (sebastian.bablok@ift.uib.no) at the University of Bergen.

Appendix A

List of Publications

A.1 Publications Significantly Contributed To

- Alme, J. et al. (2008): "Radiation-tolerant, SRAM-FPGA Based Trigger and Readout Electronics for the ALICE Experiment", in Proceedings for Real-Time Conference, 2007 15th IEEE-NPSS, Batavia IL (USA), April 2007, and IEEE transactions on Nuclear Science Volume 55, Issue 1, Part 1, Feb. 2008 Page(s):76 – 83, Digital Object Identifier 10.1109/TNS.2007.910677
- Alme, J. et al. (2006): "Case Study of a Solution for Active Partial Reconfiguration of a Xilinx Virtex-II Pro", Proceedings FPGA world 2006 Academic, Page(s) 30–34, ISSN 1404-3041 ISRN MDH-MRTC-204/2006-1-SE I
- Alme, J. Richter, M. et al. (2006): "The control system for the Front-end electronics of the ALICE time projection chamber", in Proceedings for Real Time Conference, 2005. 14th IEEE-NPSS, Stockholm (Sweden), June 2005 and IEEE transactions on Nuclear Science, June 2006, Volume: 53, Part 1, page(s): 980-985, Digital Object Identifier: 10.1109/TNS.2006.874726
- Alme, J. Richter, M. et al (2005): "A distributed, heterogeneous control system for the ALICE TPC electronics", International Conference Workshops on Parallel Processing 2005. 14-17 June 2005 Page(s):265 – 272, Digital Object Identifier 10.1109/ICPPW.2005.7

A.2 All Publications

- Alme, J. et al. (2008): "Radiation-tolerant, SRAM-FPGA Based Trigger and Readout Electronics for the ALICE Experiment", in Proceedings for Real-Time Conference, 2007 15th IEEE-NPSS, Batavia IL (USA), April 2007, and IEEE transactions on Nuclear Science Volume 55, Issue 1, Part 1, Feb. 2008 Page(s):76 – 83, Digital Object Identifier 10.1109/TNS.2007.910677
- Alme, J. Fehlker, D. et al. (2007): "Software environment for controlling and reconfiguration of Xilinx Virtex FPGAs", Proceedings for the Topical Workshop for Particle Physics 2007, Prague (Czech Republic), September 2007, URL: http://www.particle.cz/conferences/twepp07/
- Alme, J. et al. (2006): "Case Study of a Solution for Active Partial Reconfiguration of a Xilinx Virtex-II Pro", Proceedings FPGA world 2006 Academic, Page(s) 30–34, ISSN 1404-3041 ISRN MDH-MRTC-204/2006-1-SE I

- Alme, J. Richter, M. et al. (2006): "The control system for the Front-end electronics of the ALICE time projection chamber", in Proceedings for Real Time Conference, 2005. 14th IEEE-NPSS, Stockholm (Sweden), June 2005 and IEEE transactions on Nuclear Science, June 2006, Volume: 53, Part 1, page(s): 980-985, Digital Object Identifier: 10.1109/TNS.2006.874726
- Alme, J. Tröger, G. et al. (2006): "FPGAs Reconfiguration for Radiation Tolerance", GSI Scientific Report 2005, Instrumentation Methods 27, Page(s) 288, URL: http://www.gsi.de/informationen/wti/library/scientificreport2005/index.html
- Alme, J. et al. (2005): "The ALICE TPC Readout Control Unit", Proceedings of the 2005 IEEE Nuclear Science Symposium and Medical Imaging Conference, Puerto Rico (USA), October 2005, Page(s):575 – 579, Volume 1, Digital Object Identifier 10.1109/NSSMIC.2005.1596317
- Alme, J, Richter, M et al. (2005): "Communication Software for ALICE TPC Front-End Electronics", Proceedings for the 11th Workshop on Electronics for LHC and Future Experiments, Heidelberg (Germany), September 2005, Page(s) 358-362, ISBN 9290832622
- Alme, J, Røed, K er al. (2005): "Irradiation tests of the complete ALICE TPC Front-End Electronics chain", Proceedings for the 11th Workshop on Electronics for LHC and Future Experiments, Heidelberg (Germany), September 2005, Page(s) 165-169, ISBN 9290832622
- Alme, J. Tröger, G. et al. (2005): "FPGA Dynamic Reconfiguration in ALICE and beyond", Proceedings for the 11th Workshop on Electronics for LHC and Future Experiments, Heidelberg (Germany), September 2005, Page(s) 119-122, ISBN 9290832622
- Alme, J. Campagnolo, R et al. (2005): "Readout Electronics for the ALICE Time Projection Chamber", Prepared for EPS International Europhysics Conference on High Energy Physics (HEP-EPS 2005), Lisbon (Portugal), July 2005, Page(s) 4 pages, URL: http://pos.sissa.it/archive/conferences/021/373/HEP2005_373.pdf
- Alme, J. Richter, M. et al (2005): "A distributed, heterogeneous control system for the ALICE TPC electronics", Proceedings for the International Conference Workshops on Parallel Processing 2005. June 2005 Page(s):265 – 272, Digital Object Identifier 10.1109/ICPPW.2005.7
- Alme, J, Gonzalez Gutiérrez, C. et al (2004): "The ALICE TPC Readout Control Unit", Proceedings of the 10th Workshop in Electronics for LHC and future experiments. Boston (USA), September 2004, URL: http://lhc-workshop-2004.web.cern.ch/lhcworkshop-2004/4-Parallel%20sessions%20B/58-gonzales_proceedings.pdf

Additionally, a total number of 129 publications from 2004 to present are listed where credited as part of the ALICE Collaboration, the ALICE TPC Collaboration or the ALICE PHOS Collaboration (based on results from SPIRES-HEP Search).

Appendix B

List of Abbreviations

| ACORDE | ALICE Cosmic Ray Detector |
|--------|--|
| ADC | Analogue to Digital Converter |
| AHB | Advanced High-performance Bus |
| ALICE | A Large Ion Collider Experiment |
| ALTRO | Alice TPC Readout (ASIC) |
| APD | Avalanche Photo Diode |
| ASIC | Application Specific Integrated Circuit |
| ATLAS | A Toroidal LHC ApparatuS |
| BRAM | Block RAM |
| CDH | Common Data Header |
| CE | Control Engine |
| CERN | Conseil Européen pour la Recherche Nucléaire |
| CLB | Configuration Logic Block |
| CMS | Compact Muon Solenoid |
| CPLD | Complex Programmable Logic Device |
| CPV | Charged-Particle Veto |
| CSP | Charge Sensitive Preamplifier |
| CSR | Control/Status Register |
| СТР | Central Trigger Processor |
| CVS | Concurrent Versioning System |
| DAC | Digital to Analogue Converter |
| DAQ | Data Acquisition |

| DCS | Detector Control System | | | | |
|------------------|---------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|
| DIM | Distributed Information Management | | | | |
| DUT | Design Under Test | | | | |
| EBI | Expansion Bus Interface | | | | |
| ECS | Experiment Control System | | | | |
| EDAC | Error Detection and Correction Coding | | | | |
| EDC | Error Detection Coding | | | | |
| EMC | Electromagnetic Calorimeter | | | | |
| EMCal | Electromagnetic Calorimeter | | | | |
| FC Bus | Frontend Control Bus | | | | |
| FEC | Front End Card | | | | |
| Fee | Front-end electronics | | | | |
| FeeServer | Front-end electronics Server | | | | |
| FIFO | First In First Out | | | | |
| FMD | Forward Multiplicity Detector | | | | |
| FPGA | Field Programmable Gate Array | | | | |
| GCLK | Global Clock logic | | | | |
| GTL | Gunning Transfer Logic | | | | |
| I ² C | Inter-Integrated Circuit | | | | |
| ΙΟ | Input/Output | | | | |
| JFFS2 | Journaling Flash File System 2 | | | | |
| JTAG | Joint Test Action Group | | | | |
| LHC | Large Hadron Collider | | | | |
| LHCb | LHC beauty | | | | |
| LTU | Local Trigger Unit | | | | |
| LUT | Look Up Table | | | | |

| MMU | Memory Management Unit | | | | | | | |
|-------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| PASA | PreAmplified Shaper | | | | | | | |
| PHOS | PHOton Spectrometer | | | | | | | |
| PLD | Programmable Logic Device | | | | | | | |
| PVSS | ProzessVisualisierungs und Steuerungs-System | | | | | | | |
| RAM | Random Access Memory | | | | | | | |
| ROM | Read Only Memory | | | | | | | |
| RCU | Readout Control Unit | | | | | | | |
| SEU | Single Event Upset | | | | | | | |
| SPD | Silicon Pixel Detector | | | | | | | |
| SRAM | Static Random Access Memory | | | | | | | |
| TMR | Triple Modular Redundancy | | | | | | | |
| TPC | Time Projection Chamber | | | | | | | |
| TRD | Transition Radiation Detector | | | | | | | |
| TRU | Trigger Region Unit | | | | | | | |
| TTC | Trigger, Timing and Control | | | | | | | |
| TTCrx | TTC receiver | | | | | | | |
| UART | Universal Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter | | | | | | | |
| USB | Universal Serial Bus | | | | | | | |
| VHDL | VHSIC (Very High Speed Integrated Circuit) Hardware Description Language | | | | | | | |
| ZDC | Zero Degree Calorimeter | | | | | | | |

Appendix C

Design Methodology

This chapter discusses the design methodology with a special focus given to the software tools used in the firmware designs presented in this thesis.

C.1 Introduction

To ensure high quality designs, it is of vital importance to follow a strict design methodology. A typical design cycle should consist of at least three steps: 1) Gather the functional requirements in a specification document, 2) doing the actual design, and 3) verifying and testing the design to make sure that it follows the requirements as specified. During a design cycle it is normal to move back and forth between the different steps, especially step 2 and 3. When finishing the third phase, the design is ready to be released with a given version number. If and when further modifications are needed due to bugs or requirement changes, the cycle is restarted from the top and results in a new release some time later. This approach has been followed for the designs presented in this thesis.

C.2 Documentation

C.2.1 Requirement Specification

A template has been made for the requirement specification, giving all the documents a unified look and feel. Typically the specification document is written fairly simple prior to starting the actual design, and filled in with design description details afterwards. For each new version, the document has been updated so that it at all time matches the state of the design.

C.2.2 Coding Guidelines and In Code Documentation

An additional important task done for increasing the quality of the designs is the VHDL coding guideline document. This document states what are considered to be

"good code" and "bad code", and helps unifying the coding style of the designers at Microelectronic Department at the University of Bergen. That all designers write the same dialect of VHDL, significantly simplifies the tasks of updating code written by other designers. Most of the code written in the presented designs follows these guidelines, but some code written prior to defining the coding convention have not necessarily been updated to match the convention.

The VHDL coding guidelines also encourages writing in code documentation. This has been done for all designs.

C.3 Version Management

C.3.1 Release Versions

A release version is defined when the firmware have implemented a set of decided requirements and these have been verified both functionally with a testbench and if possible on a hardware setup. For each release the design document is updated. The release version number is stored in a register in the firmware (except for the Trigger Receiver Module), making it possible to quickly decide what version of firmware the various users have on their system. The documentation and the version information simplify the support of the firmware, since the features and bugs of the various versions are known.

C.3.2 CVS

CVS is a version control system and is used to record the history of the source files. It is helpful to structure the project and keep track of changes done during a projects lifetime, tag certain versions of the code to make a final release-version and finally share the code between several designers working on the same project.

CVS has been extensively used for automatically keeping track of all changes done to the documentation and source code files. All projects include a folder called VHDL and a folder called docs that are checked into the CVS database. In the docs folder, documents used as a reference base of the design are stored for most of the projects in addition to the design documentation itself.

C.4 Publishing

When a final release version are done it is published on the Bergen Wiki Webpage[47] devoted to the Bergen activities in software and firmware development for the ALICE project. The information published typically consists of:

- Source files, including testbench
- Design documentation
- Hardware test designs where applicable
- Programming files where applicable
- Scripts and other useful files for further testing and verification of the design
- Version change logs

Additionally, if there are known bugs and issues with some of the designs, these have been posted on the Wiki page with suggestions on workarounds until a new version has been released. The Wiki page also links to other important pages, for instance the CVS web interface.

Appendix D

Tables and Firmware Version Change Logs

This chapter lists the register maps and other important tables concerning the firmware that is described in this thesis. Additionally the firmware version change logs are listed.

D.1 Table Legend

The accessibility of the registers listed in the tables is given by 3 abbreviations:

- W=write
- R=read
- T= write trigger (not physical registers)

If the legend is RW it simply means that the register can both be read from and written to.

D.2 DCS board Firmware

D.2.1 Tables

| Register name | Address | Туре | Description |
|------------------|---------|------|---|
| FW_Version[31:0] | 0xBF00 | R | [31:24] Day |
| | | | [23:20] Month |
| | | | [19:16] Year |
| | | | [15:8] Major Number |
| | | | [7:0] Minor Number |
| SM_Enable | 0xBF01 | RW | Enables external selectmap interface |
| set_old_mode | 0xBF02 | RW | Sets the mode lines back to old mode (v2.7 |
| | | | and prior) if writing 0x01d to this register. |
| Set_Bunchreset | 0x4A00 | Т | Sets TTCrx_reset = BunchCnt_Reset |
| Set Eventreset | 0x4A01 | Т | Sets TTCrx_reset = EventCnt_Reset |

Table D-1: List of registers that can be accessed externally via the memory mapped module.

| Register name | Address | Туре | Description |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|------|--|
| MSGiBuffer[31:0] | 0x80000400 – 0x800007FF | RW | User defined interface. Instruction Memory for MessageBuffer |
| MSGoBuffer[31:0] | 0x80000800 – 0x80000BFF | RW | User defined interface. Result Memory for MessageBuffer |
| RegFile[7:0] | 0x80000060 – 0x8000006F | RW | User defined interface. Control register for MessageBuffer |
| smap_direct_ctrl[7:0] | 0x80000070 – 0x8000007F | RW | PIO interface. Selectmap Control Lines [0] cclk (output) [1] rdwr_b (output) [2] init_b (input) [3] prog_b (output) [4] busy (input) [5] cs_b0 (output) [6] done (input) [7] cs_b1 (output – in case of 2 FPGAs) |
| smap_direct_in[7:0] | 0x80000080 0x8000008F | R | Selectmap data in |
| smap_direct_out[7:0] | 0x80000030 - 0x8000003F | W | Selectmap data out |

Table D-2: List of register addresses that are accessed by the ARM CPU towards the RCU Communication Module.

| Register name | Address | Туре | Description |
|------------------|---------|------|---|
| ComStat[7:0] | 0x0 | RW | Command/Status register: controls the configuration controller and the mux for the access of the MSGiBuffer memory. [7] Start Transaction. Starts the configuration controller [6] 0: select configuration controller access to the MSGiBuffer 1: select Linux access to the MSGiBuffer [5] DCS FW reset. Async reset '1' = RESET [4] Disable outputs. '1' = Disable [3:2] Mode_select(1:0) "00" Memory mapped (default) "10" Flash "11" SelectMap "01" Not Used [1] Reset: Async reset '1' = RESET |
| | | | [0] Transaction done |
| MajorNumber[7:0] | 0x1 | R | Version majorNumber |
| MinorNumber[7:0] | 0x2 | R | Version minorNumber |

 Table D-3: RegFile memory location of the RCU Communication Module

 including Command/Status (ComStat) register

| Register name | Address | Description |
|-----------------------|--------------|---|
| smap_direct_ctrl[7:0] | 0x80000070 - | Selectmap Control Lines |
| | 0x8000007F | [0] cclk (output) |
| | | [1] rdwr_b (output) |
| | | [2] init_b (input) |
| | | [3] prog_b (output) |
| | | [4] busy (input) |
| | | [5] cs_b0 (output) |
| | | [6] done (input) |
| | | [7] cs_b1 (output – in case of 2 FPGAs) |
| smap_direct_in[7:0] | 0x80000080 - | Selectmap data in |
| | 0x8000008F | |
| smap_direct_out[7:0] | 0x80000030 - | Selectmap data out |
| | 0x8000003F | |

Table D-4: ARM stripe memory space for the selectMAP interface.

| Physical Lines | SelectMap mode | Flash mode | Normal operation mode | | | | |
|-----------------|---|--|-----------------------|--|--|--|--|
| dcs_data(31:16) | Not used | addr(15:0) | data(31:16) | | | | |
| dcs_data(15:0) | (15) – cs_b (14) – busy (13) – done (12) – tri_select (7:0) – selmap_data | (15) - f_RynBy (14:8)- addr(22:16) (7:0) - data(7:0) | data(15:0) | | | | |
| dcs_addr(15:0) | - | addr(15:0) | addr(15:0) | | | | |
| dcs_ctrl0 | Cclk | CE | cstb_n | | | | |
| dcs_ctrl1 | rdwr_b WE rnw | | | | | | |
| dcs_ctrl2 | init_b | ack_n | | | | | |
| dcs_ctrl3 | prog_b | prog_b OE SEU Error | | | | | |
| dcs_ctrl4 | msm_interrupt | | | | | | |
| dcs_ctrl5 | reset_n | | | | | | |
| dcs_ctrl6 | mode_select(0) | | | | | | |
| dcs_ctrl7 | mode_select(1) (TTCrx_ready for BusyBox) | | | | | | |

Table D-5: Definition of the physical lines on the DCS-RCU connector in the different modes of operation.

| bit word | 31 | 27 | 23 | 19 | 15 | 11 | 7 | 3 | 0 | |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------|-------|--------|----|---------------------|---|------------|---|--|
| Header | Version id | Control bits | Block | Number | | Number of Word | s | Command id | | |
| | Command wo | rd #1 | | | | | | | | |
| | Command word #2 | | | | | | | | | |
| | Command wo | rd #3 | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Command wor | rd #N (number of | | | | | | | | |
| | Block end marker | | | | | Checksum (Not Used) | | | | |
| Header | Version id | Control bits | Block | Number | | Number of Word | s | Command i | d | |
| | Command wo | rd #1 | | | | | | | | |
| | Command wo | rd #2 | | | | | | | | |
| | Command word #3 | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Command word #N (number of words) | | | | | | | | | |
| | Block end marker Checksum (Not Used) | | | | | | | | | |
| | End marker | nd marker h"0000" | | | | | | | | |

Table D-6: Message Input Buffer (Instruction Memory) format. The Block End Marker is defined to be h"DD33", while the End Marker is h"AA55".

| bit | 31 27 | 23 | 19 | 15 | 11 | 7 | 3 | |
|--------|--|--|---|-------------|-----------------|---|---|--|
| Header | Command id | Block Nu | mber | Number of W | Number of Words | | | |
| | Status - [4] no end mai | rker, [3] FSM error | r, [3] FSM error, [2] no bus grant, [1] no target answer, [0] no marker | | | | | |
| | Returned data #1 (if read command) | | | | | | | |
| | Returned data #2 (if read command) | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | Returned data #N (if read command) | | | | | | | |
| | Command id | command id Block Number "000000" Number of Words | | | | | | |
| | Status - [4] no end marker, [3] FSM error, [2] no bus grant, [1] no target answer, [0] no marker | | | | | | | |
| | Returned data #1 (if read command) | | | | | | | |
| | Returned data #2 (if read command) Returned data #N (if read command) | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |

Table D-7: Message Output Buffer (Result Memory) format. Number of Words includes the header and status word. If transaction is successful then the status-word is 0.

| Command name | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| SINGLE_READ | A single read operation |
| SINGLE_WRITE | A single write operation |
| MULTI_READ | Block read operation. |
| | The count parameter indicates the number of words of a certain format |
| MULTI WRITE | Block write operation. |
| _ | The count parameter indicates the number of words of a certain |
| | format. |
| RANDOM_READ | Random read operation |
| RANDOM_WRITE | Random write operation. |
| FLASH_ERASEALL | Erase the complete RCU Flash |
| FLASH_ERASE_SECTOR | Erase one sector of the RCU Flash |
| FLASH_MULTI_ | Erase multiple sequential sectors of the RCU Flash |
| ERASE_SECTOR | |
| FLASH_READID | Read the ID of the RCU Flash |
| | 0 = Manufacturer ID |
| | 1 = Device ID |
| FLASH_RESET | Reset the RCU Flash |

Table D-8: The commands that are available for the MessageBuffer. Note that the commands given with FLASH in front are only available when Flash mode is chosen.

D.2.2 Version Change Log

Version 1.0 (~april 2004)

- Design is based on TRD DCS FW version 011.
- MessageBuffer v1.0 (Torsten Alts original version), renamed RCU Communication Module.
- Virtex driver for programming RCU FPGA included.

Version 2.0 (~may 2005)

• Updated RCU Communication Module with new header format.

Version 2.1 (12.12.2005)

- Updated RCU Communication Module:
- Corrected the bug of multiread/multiwrite that was introduced with new header format in v2.0.
- Compressing possible (2x16, 3x10, 4x8).

Version 2.2 (05.01.2006)

- Updated RCU Communication Module:
 - o Bugfix of reset state a state machine in rcu master module.
 - o Bugfix in configuration controller on checking the command/address on multiread.
 - o Bugfix in configuration controller on multiwrite with compressing.
 - Fix in the compressing so that the way to count words matches the requirements.
 - When compressing, writing/reading is switched from Big Endian to Little Endian.
 - o Included version, mode select module and Flash interface in RCU communication Module.
 - o Made new set of commands for Flash communication.
 - o Synthesized using Mentor Graphics Precission using an edf file in Quartus.
 - o *fw r* command in software also resets certain fw modules on the DCS board.
 - o Flash interface is reset whenever Flash mode is not selected.
- Updated ARM stripe.
- Removed Direct PIO Flash interface.

Version 2.3 (27.02.2006)

- Updated RCU Communication Module:
 - Multiplexer that chooses to send BunchCount Reset or EventCount Reset to RCU using the Aux4 line. Select by using memory mapped interface on DCS board. Reg addr 0x4A00 selects BunchCount Reset. Reg addr 0x4A01 selects EventCount Reset.
 - Memory Mapped Version register added: 8b'day & 4b'Month & 4b'Year & 8b'MajorNumber & 8b'MinorNumber: Reg addr 0xBF00.
 - Interrupt (negative polarity) from Slow Control moved to *RegFile* Address of ARM stripe (0x80000060). Stripe Interrupt address *IRW_INT_PLD[5]*.
 - *ComStat* register is made more robust using triple redundancy.

Version 2.4 (19.03.2006)

- RCU Communication Module:
 - Memory size is made generic.
 - Added tristate-select input for selectmap mode.
 - o Increased timeout period of RCU memory mapped communication to 32 clks.
 - Increased length of *we* and *ce* pulses of Flash interface.
 - o Changed tristate-select for Flash interface.
 - o Increased wait time for Flash read.

Version 2.5 (08.05.2006)

- VREG Module updated with new version from KIP.
- Timing warnings removed with correct constraints settings.
- Removed all "sensitivity list" warnings in Ethernet, jtag, vreg and I²C module.
- All controllable outputs to RCU (except *dcs_ctrl[7:6]* = "00") is set to high impedance if *output_enable_n* = 1 is high.
- *output_enable_n* is set by bit 4 in *ComStat* register.

Version 2.6 (01.08.2006)

- RCU Communication Module:
 - o RCU Flash interface rebuilt to match latest version of RCU support FPGA FW (v1.3).
 - Improved error-handling in Flash interface. Checks for RynBy line, as well as bit q(5) of Flash-data.
 - Added *Comstat(5)* as DCS FW reset.
 - Changed *rcu_data*(15) in Flash mode to input *f_rynBy*.
 - Added a new generic variable that makes it possible to select the type of Flash of the RCU Motherboard. BB = boot sector in the beginning, BT = boot sector at the end.

Version 2.61 (Trigger-OR)

- Pinning on DCS-RCU connector changed to match Trigger-OR board.
- Added *sm_enable* register that is enabled by writing to 0xBF01.
- Bus data width reduced to 16 bits. The remaining 16 bits are used for SelectMAP interface.
- SelectMAP interface can be accessed simultaneously as memory mapped interface.

Version 2.62 (BusyBox)

• Equal to v2.61 but with slightly different pinning on dcs-rcu (busy-logic) connector.

Version 2.7 (03.08.2007)

- Ethernet Module upgraded to increase speed of Ethernet link as described⁴⁰. This upgrade also means updating the Kernel of the board.
- Minor bugs in v2.6x corrected related to the RCU master module.

Version 2.71 (Trigger-OR)

• Same as v2.61, but including the upgrades given in v2.7.

Version 2.72 (BusyBox)

• Same as v2.62, but including the upgrades given in v2.7.

⁴⁰ http://frodo.nt.fh-koeln.de/~tkrawuts/update_howto/

Version 2.8 (14.11.2007)

- Bugfix concerning the mode settings. The error led the RCU support FPGA to go into selectmap mode when rebooting the DCS board. This also led the *prog_b* line to go low long enough to sometimes erase the Xilinx. The mode settings has been changed to:
 - "11"/"00" Memory mapped mode.
 - o "01" Flash mode.
 - o "10" Selectmap mode.
- The most important is that memory mapped mode is now "11". This is default state of these lines when the DCS board does not drive the lines during reboot.
- Removed a register on the reset line (*dcs_ctrl5*) to avoid the 80 ns reset pulse whenever the DCS board reboots.
- Added a shift-register on the mode and reset to make sure the lines are stable and asserted at least 8 clks to increase robustness.
- Added register 0xbf02 for setting the system back to old mode settings (by writing 0x01d) for backward compatibility.

Version 2.81 (Trigger-OR)

• Same as v2.71, but including the upgrades given in v2.8 (where only the correction of the reset bug matters in this setup).

Version 2.82 (BusyBox)

• Same as v2.72, but including the upgrades given in v2.8 (where only the correction of the reset bug matters in this setup).

Version 2.83 (BusyBox) (15.05.2008)

• Routed *ttcrx_rdy* out on *dcs_ctrl7* (otherwise equal to 2.82).

D.3 RCU main FPGA DCS Interface

D.3.1 Tables

| Register name | Address | Туре | Description | | | |
|---------------|---------|------|--|--|--|--|
| Global Reset | 0x5300 | Т | Issues a global reset to both FEC and RCU | | | |
| FEC Reset | 0x5301 | Т | Issues a reset to the FEC only | | | |
| RCU Reset | 0x5302 | Т | Issues a reset to the RCU Xilinx. | | | |
| arbiter_irq | 0x5310 | Т | Writing to this address will raise the interrupt | | | |
| | | | flag to the arbiter. | | | |
| Grant[1:0] | 0x5311 | R | [0] SIU grant | | | |
| | | | [1] DCS grant | | | |

Table D-9: List of registers that can be accessed externally.

D.3.2 Version Change Log

Version 0.1 (~Oct 2007)

• First proper version of the RCU main FPGA DCS interface.

Version 0.2 (14.11.2007)

• Adapted to match new mode settings of dcs fw v2.8. For backward compatibility, the old normal mode setting is still valid.

Version 0.3 (12.02.08)

- Added *seu error* line from the RCU support FPGA as an input. Inverted it and masked it with mode pins.
- Added reset registers: Global, fec & rcu.
- Changed the register addresses for the grant and interrupt.
- Added we for msm module and separate data input from msm module.

D.4 PHOS Board Controller

D.4.1 Tables

| Register name | Addr. | Туре | Description | | |
|---------------|-------|------|---|--|--|
| UNLOCK | 0x0 | RW | One bit unlock register for writing to read only regs for | | |
| | | | testing. | | |
| | | | 0: Locked | | |
| | | | 1: Unlocked | | |
| L0CNT[15:0] | 0x0B | R(W) | Number of L0 triggers received | | |
| L2CNT[15:0] | 0x0C | R(W) | Number of L2a triggers received | | |
| SCLKCNT[15:0] | 0x0D | R(W) | Sampling clock counter | | |
| SLOWCTR_ERR | 0x0E | R | Number of timeout situations in Slow Control | | |
| [7:0] | | | | | |
| CSR0[11:0] | 0x11 | RW | Interrupt Mask Register: | | |
| | | | Default value = 0x1FF | | |
| | | | [11] HV Update Mode. | | |
| | | | 0 = The Board Controller updates DAC with | | |
| | | | update_hv command. | | |
| | | | 1 = The Board Controller continuously updates | | |
| | | | DACs | | |
| | | | [10] Conversion Mode. | | |
| | | | 0 = The Board Controller reads the content of the | | |
| | | | monitor ADC with the STCNV command | | |
| | | | 1 = monitor ADC converts continuously | | |
| | | | [9:8] Error Mask. These two bits mask the assertion of | | |
| | | | the Error line. This line is asserted with the | | |
| | | | flags registered in CSR1[9:8] | | |
| | | | 0 = the error is masked | | |
| | | | 1 = the error asserts the line | | |
| | | | [7:0] Interrupt Mask. These bits mask the bits of | | |
| | | | CSR1[7:0] for the assertion of the Interrupt line | | |

| Register name | Addr. | Type | Description | | |
|-----------------|-------|------|---|--|--|
| CSR1[13:0] | 0x12 | R | Error Status Register: | | |
| | | | Default value = 0x0000 | | |
| | | | [13] Value of Slow Control Interrupt line | | |
| | | | [12] Value of ALTRO bus Error line | | |
| | | | [11] Slow Control Instruction Error | | |
| | | | [10] ALTRO error: Registered value of ALTRO bus | | |
| | | | error line | | |
| | | | [9] ALTRO bus Instruction Error (to Board Controller) | | |
| | | | [8] Parity error of ALTRO bus 20 MSB | | |
| | | | [7] Wissing Sampling Clock [6] ALTEO Dowor, Digital 4 2V 8 3 3V and Bias | | |
| | | | Supply Error | | |
| | | | [5] Shaper +6 0V Power Supply Error | | |
| | | | [4] 4.2 V or 3.3 V digital currents higher than | | |
| | | | thresholds. | | |
| | | | [3] 4.2 V or 3.3 V digital voltages lower than | | |
| | | | thresholds. | | |
| | | | [2] 4.0 V, +6.0 V, -6.0 V, 13.5 V analog currents | | |
| | | | higher than threshold. | | |
| | | | [1] 4.0 V, +6.0 V, -6.0 V, 13.5 V analog voltages | | |
| | | | lower than threshold. | | |
| 0000145-01 | 0.12 | | [0] Temp1, Temp2 or Temp3 higher than threshold. | | |
| CSR2[15:0] | 0X13 | RW | Status and Configuration | | |
| | | | [15:11] Hardware Address (read only) | | |
| | | | [10] Card Isolated | | |
| | | | [9:8] Number of times a ADC threshold violation must | | |
| | | | occur before it is reported | | |
| | | | [7] Not Used | | |
| | | | [6] Enables Hamming correction on HVDAC values | | |
| | | | and Thresholds. | | |
| | | | [5] Enables DAC clock | | |
| | | | [4] Enables Sampling Clock | | |
| | | | [3] Enables Readout Clock | | |
| | | | [2] Power Switch for Shaper Power Regulator | | |
| | | | [1] Power switch for Blas Power Regulator | | |
| CSD2[15:0] | 0v14 | | [0] Power Switch for ALTRO Power Regulator | | |
| CSK3[15.0] | 0814 | | Default value $= 0x2220$ | | |
| | | | [15] This hit is set to 1 when the Board Controller has | | |
| | | | completed the transaction with the mADC. It is | | |
| | | | reset at the beginning of every transaction. | | |
| | | | [14:8] Scevl timeout value. Max num of clks for each | | |
| | | | transaction on the ALTRO bus when Board | | |
| | | | Controller is master. | | |
| | | | [7:0] rdclk / sclk warning ratio | | |
| DEBUG[1:0] | 0x15 | R | [1] Value of Slow Control data line | | |
| | | | [0] Value of test_mg input | | |
| CNTLAT | 0x16 | T | Latch L0, L2, SCLK counters | | |
| | 0x17 | - | Clear L0, L2, SCLK counters | | |
| CSR1CLR | 0x18 | | Clear Error Status Register | | |
| ALKSI | 0x19 | | Reset all the ALTROS | | |
| BCRST | 0x1A | | Reset Board Controller to default values | | |
| SICNV | 0x1B | | Start Conversion / Readout monitor ADC | | |
| SCEVL | 0x1C | | Scan Event-length registers in all ALTRO channels | | |
| | 0x1D | | Start readout of Event Length Hitmap register. | | |
| | 0x1E | | Update HV | | |
| BCVERSION[15:0] | 0x20 | R | Board Controller Version | | |

| Register name | Addr. | Туре | Description | | |
|----------------|-------|-------|---|--|--|
| VTS_HIGH[14:0] | 0x21 | R(W) | Voltage Temperature Status register: | | |
| | | . , | [0] TEMP1 over th | | |
| | | | [1] D4V0 over th | | |
| | | | [2] D4V0C over th | | |
| | | | [3] D3V3 over th | | |
| | | | [4] D3V3C over th | | |
| | | | [5] TEMP2 over th | | |
| | | | [6] A6nV0 over th | | |
| | | | [7] AGNVUC OVER IN | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | [10] TEMP3 over th | | |
| | | | [10] TEMP5 Over th | | |
| | | | [12] A3V3C over th | | |
| | | | [13] A13\/0 over th | | |
| | | | [14] A13V0C over th | | |
| VTS LOW[14:0] | 0x22 | R(W) | Voltage Temperature Status register: | | |
| | | , | [0] TEMP1 under th | | |
| | | | [1] D4V0 under th | | |
| | | | [2] D4V0C under th | | |
| | | | [3] D3V3 under th | | |
| | | | [4] D3V3C under th | | |
| | | | [5] TEMP2 under th | | |
| | | | [6] A6nV0 under th | | |
| | | | [7] A6nV0C under th | | |
| | | | [8] A6pV0 under th | | |
| | | | [9] A6pV0C under th | | |
| | | | [10] TEMP3 under th | | |
| | | | [11] A3V3 under th | | |
| | | | [12] A3V3C Under th | | |
| | | | [13] A13V0 under th | | |
| | 0v23 | | Double hamming errors found in ADC high threshold | | |
| GH[14:0] | 0,23 | 1.() | memory . | | |
| TH_HMGERR_LO | 0x24 | R(W) | Double hamming errors found in ADC low threshold | | |
| W[14:0] | | | memory. | | |
| HV_FB1[15:0] | 0x25 | R(W) | Compared outputs from DAC for APD | | |
| | | | [7:0] APD 16 – APD 23 | | |
| | | | [15:8] APD 7 – APD 0 | | |
| | | | 0: DAC not set/Wrong | | |
| | | | 1: DAC set/Correct | | |
| HV_FB2[15:0] | 0x26 | R(W) | Compared outputs from DAC for APD | | |
| | | | [7:0] APD 15 – APD 8 | | |
| | | | [15:8] APD 24 – APD 31 | | |
| | | | 0: DAC not set/Wrong | | |
| | 0.07 | D(M) | 1: DAC set/Correct | | |
| | UXZ7 | R(VV) | | | |
| [15.0] | | | [7.0] APD $7 = APD 0$ | | |
| HV HVHMGERR? | 0x28 | R(W) | Double hamming errors for the following: | | |
| [15:0] | | | [7:0] APD 15 – APD 8 | | |
| | | | [15:8] APD 24 – APD 31 | | |
| ADC DIFF[14:0] | 0x29 | RW | Sets which ADC values that should be treated as currents | | |
| | | | in the ADC value and ADC threshold memory. In practice | | |
| | | | this is a diff between V_{previous} and V_{current} | | |
| | | | Default Value: 0x5294 | | |
| ADC_DIFF_DIR | 0x2A | R(W) | Sets the expected direction of the current for the current | | |
| [14:0] | | | measurements given by ADC_DIFF register. | | |

| Register name | Addr. | Туре | Description | | |
|-----------------|--------|--------|---|--|--|
| | | | 0: Current = V _{previous} - V _{current} 1: Current = V _{current} - V _{previous} Default Value: 0x0080 | | |
| | ĺ | | | | |
| LAST_ADD_MSB | 0x2C | R | Debug register for ALTRO bus transaction | | |
| [15:0] | ĺ | | [15:12] Value of GTL drivers (oeba_i , | | |
| | ĺ | | Transaction | | |
| | ĺ | | [11:8] Value of GTL drivers of not valid | | |
| | | | transaction | | |
| | ĺ | | [7:4] MSB of last valid address | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | [3:0] MSB of last not valid address Received | | |
| LAST_VALID_ADD | 0x2D | R | Debug register for ALTRO bus transaction: | | |
| [15:0] | L | | LSB of last valid address received at the FEC | | |
| LAST_NOTVALID_ | 0x2E | R | Debug register for ALTRO bus transaction: | | |
| ADD[15:0] | | | LSB of the last not valid address received at the FEC. | | |
| | 0~30 _ | D\\/ | Min Throshold for the ADCe | | |
| Threshold | 0x3F | []]] | [15:11] Hamming code | | |
| Memory[14:0] | 0.02 | | [10] 0: Threshold for Voltage | | |
| | | | 1: Threshold for Current | | |
| | | | [9:0] Data value | | |
| ADC Max | 0x40 – | RW | Max Threshold for the ADCs | | |
| Threshold | 0x4E | | [15:11] Hamming code | | |
| Memory[14:0] | ĺ | | [10] 0: Threshold for Voltage | | |
| | | | 1: I hreshold for Current | | |
| ADC Data | 0~50 | D\\/ | [9.0] Data value | | |
| Memory[9:0] | 0x5F | | [0:0] Data value | | |
| HV DAC settings | 0x60 - | RW | High voltage bias value for APDs | | |
| memory | 0x7F | | 0x60-0x67: APD 23 down to APD 16 | | |
| [14:0] | | | 0x68-0x6F: APD 0 to APD 7 | | |
| | | | 0x70-0x77: APD 8 to APD 15 | | |
| | | | 0x78-0x7F: APD 31 down to APD 24 | | |
| | ĺ | | [15:11] Hamming code | | |
| | ĺ | | [10] Don't care (not used) | | |
| | | | [9:0] Value to Write | | |

Table D-10: List of registers that can be accessed externally. Note that the registers marked with "R(W)" can be written to when unlock bit is set.

| Memory location name | Addr. | Description |
|----------------------|-------|--|
| TEMP1-MIN_TH | 0x30 | Minimum Temperature Threshold for ADC IC13 |
| | | Default Data Value: 0x0 (disabled) |
| D4V0_MIN_TH | 0x31 | Minimum 4.0V Digital Voltage Threshold |
| | | Default Data Value: 0x1D8 (= 3.8 V) |
| D4V0C_MIN_TH | 0x32 | Minimum 4.0V Digital Current Threshold |
| | | Default Value: 0x0 (disabled) |
| | | Alternatively Voltage level used for current calc. |
| D3V3_MIN_TH | 0x33 | Minimum 3.3V Digital Voltage Threshold |
| | | Default Data Value: 0x1C2 (= 2.9 V) |
| D3V3C_MIN_TH | 0x34 | Minimum 3.3V Digital Current Threshold |
| | | Default Value: 0x0 (disabled) |
| | | Alternatively Voltage level used for current calc. |
| TEMP2-MIN_TH | 0x35 | Minimum Temperature Threshold for ADC IC15 |
| | | Default Value: 0x0 (disabled) |
| A6nV0_MIN_TH | 0x36 | Minimum -6.0V Analog Voltage Threshold |
| | | Default Data Value: 0x170 (= -6.4 V) |
| A6nV0C_MIN_TH | 0x37 | Minimum -6.0V Analog Current Threshold |
| | | Default Value: 0x0 (disabled) |
| | | Alternatively Voltage level used for current calc. |
| A6pV0_MIN_TH | 0x38 | Minimum 6.0V Analog Voltage Threshold |
| | | Default Data Value: 0x1E8 (= 5.6 V) |
| A6pV0C_MIN_TH | 0x39 | Minimum 6.0V Analog Current Threshold |
| | | Default Value: 0x0 (disabled) |
| | | Alternatively Voltage level used for current calc. |
| TEMP3-MIN_TH | 0x3A | Minimum Temperature Threshold for ADC IC14 |
| | | Default Value: 0x0 (disabled) |
| A3V3_MIN_TH | 0x3B | Minimum. 3.3V Analog Voltage Threshold |
| | | Default Value: 0x1C2 (= 2.9 V) |
| A3V3C_MIN_TH | 0x3C | Minimum 3.3V Analog Current Threshold |
| | | Default Value: 0x0 (disabled) |
| | | Alternatively Voltage level used for current calc |
| A13V0_MIN_TH | 0x3D | Minimum 13.0V Analog Voltage Threshold |
| | | Default Value: 0x1D6 (= 12.6 V) |
| A13V0C_MIN_TH | 0x3E | Minimum 13.0V Analog Current Threshold |
| | | Default Value: 0x0 (disabled) |
| | | Alternatively Voltage level used for current calc |

Table D-11: ADC Minimum Threshold Value Memory. The conversionfactors are given in Table D-13

| Memory location name | Addr. | Description |
|---------------------------------------|-------|--|
| TEMP1-MAX_TH | 0x40 | Maximum Temperature Threshold for ADC IC13 |
| | | Default Data Value: 0xA0 (= 40°C) |
| D4V0_MAX_TH[| 0x41 | Maximum 4.0V Digital Voltage Threshold |
| | | Default Value: 0x0 (disabled) |
| D4V0C_MAX_TH | 0x42 | Maximum 4.0V Digital Current Threshold |
| | | Default Value: 0x00C (=0.36 A) |
| | | Alternatively Voltage level used for current calc. |
| D3V3_MAX_TH | 0x43 | Maximum 3.3V Digital Voltage Threshold |
| | | Default Value: 0x0 (disabled) |
| D3V3C_MAX_TH | 0x44 | Maximum 3.3V Digital Current Threshold |
| | | Default Value: 0x011 (= 0.73 A) |
| | | Alternatively Voltage level used for current calc. |
| TEMP2-MAX_TH | 0x45 | Maximum Temperature Threshold for ADC IC15 |
| | | Default Data Value: 0xA0 (= 40°C) |
| A6nV0_MAX_TH | 0x46 | Maximum -6.0V Analog Voltage Threshold |
| | | Default Value: 0x0 (disabled) |
| A6nV0C_MAX_TH | 0x47 | Maximum -6.0V Analog Current Threshold |
| | | Default Value: 0x00F (=0.44 A) |
| | | Alternatively Voltage level used for current calc. |
| A6pV0_MAX_TH | 0x48 | Maximum 6.0V Analog Voltage Threshold |
| | | Default Value: 0x0 (disabled) |
| A6pV0C_MAX_TH | 0x49 | Maximum 6.0V Analog Current Threshold |
| | | Default Value: 0x016 (= 0.764 A) |
| | | Alternatively Voltage level used for current calc. |
| TEMP3-MAX_TH | 0x4A | Maximum Temperature Threshold for ADC IC14 |
| · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | | Default Data Value: 0xA0 (= 40°C) |
| A3V3_MAX_TH | 0x4B | Maximum. 3.3V Analog Voltage Threshold |
| | | Default Value: 0x0 (disabled) |
| A3V3C_MAX_TH | 0x4C | Maximum 3.3V Analog Current Threshold |
| | | Default value: 0x014 (= 0.858 A) |
| | 0.45 | Alternatively Voltage level used for current calc |
| A13V0_MAX_TH | 0x4D | Maximum 13.0V Analog Voltage Threshold |
| | 0.45 | |
| A13VUC_MAX_TH | 0x4E | Maximum 13.0V Analog Current Threshold |
| | | Detault Value: UXUUF (= 0.334 A) |
| | | Alternatively Voltage level used for current calc |

Table D-12: ADC Maximum Threshold Value Memory. The conversion factors are given in Table D-13.

| Memory location name | Addr. | Description | Conv. factor |
|----------------------------|-------|--|--------------------------------------|
| TEMP1 | 0x50 | Temperature for ADC IC13 | 0.25°C * ADC counts |
| D4V0 | 0x51 | 4.0V Digital Voltage | 8.04mV * ADC counts |
| D4V0C | 0x52 | 4.0V Digital Current Alternatively Voltage level used for current calc. | 29.8mA * ADC counts |
| D3V3 | 0x53 | 3.3V Digital Voltage | 6.44 mV * ADC counts |
| D3V3C | 0x54 | 3.3V Digital Current Alternatively Voltage level used for current calc. | 42.9 mA * ADC counts |
| TEMP2 | 0x55 | Temperature for ADC IC15 | 0.25°C * ADC counts |
| A6nV0 | 0x56 | -6.0V Analog Voltage | 4.88mV * ADC counts / 1000 - 8.2V |
| A6nV0C | 0x57 | -6.0V Analog Current Alternatively Voltage level used for current calc. | 29.3mA * ADC counts |
| A6pV0 | 0x58 | 6.0V Analog Voltage Default Data Value: 0x1E8 (= 5.6 V) | 11.4 mV * ADC counts |
| A6pV0C | 0x59 | 6.0V Analog Current Alternatively Voltage level used for current calc. | 34.73 mA * ADC counts |
| TEMP3 | 0x5A | Temperature for ADC IC14 | 0.25°C * ADC counts |
| A3V3 | 0x5B | 3.3V Analog Voltage | 6.44 mV * ADC counts |
| A3V3C | 0x5C | 3.3V Analog Current Alternatively Voltage level used for current calc | 42.9 mA * ADC counts |
| A13V0 | 0x5D | 13.0V Analog Voltage | 26.8 mV * ADC counts |
| A13V0C | 0x5E | 13.0V Analog Current Alternatively Voltage level used for current calc | 22.3 mA * ADC counts |

Table D-13: ADC Value Memory. The current conversion factors are only correct if calculation of current is enabled for the given value.

| Hamming bit | |
|-------------|--|
| h(0) | d(0) ⊕ d(1) ⊕ d(3) ⊕ d(4) ⊕ d(6) ⊕ d(8) ⊕ d(10) |
| h(1) | d(0) ⊕ d(2) ⊕ d(3) ⊕ d(5) ⊕ d(6) ⊕ d(9) ⊕ d(10) |
| h(2) | d(1) ⊕ d(2) ⊕ d(3) ⊕ d(7) ⊕ d(8) ⊕ d(9) ⊕ d(10) |
| h(3) | d(4) ⊕ d(5) ⊕ d(6) ⊕ d(7) ⊕ d(8) ⊕ d(9) ⊕ d(10) |
| h(4) | $h(0) \oplus h(1) \oplus h(2) \oplus h(3) \oplus d(0) \oplus d(1) \oplus d(2) \oplus d(3) \oplus d(4) \oplus d(5) \oplus d(6) \oplus d(7)$ |
| | <i>⊕</i> d(8) <i>⊕</i> d(9) <i>⊕</i> d(10) |

Table D-14: Hamming encoding used in the Board Controller. h is the 5 bit hamming vector and d is the 11 bit data vector.

D.4.2 Version Change Log

Version 3.0 (16.08.2007)

- Functionally based on PHOS PCM v2.x (hence is the version number starting at 3.0).
- Two command interfaces.
 - ALTRO bus interface.

- \circ FC bus interface (Modified I²C interface).
- Setting of DACs for bias voltage for High Voltage region.
- Interface to 3 ADCs for verifying voltage and current-levels as well as temperatures.
- Programmable thresholds for flagging errors in ADC values.
- Monitoring error inputs from Power Regulators.
- Interrupt line to RCU for errors of a severity level craving urgent measures.
- Possible to set the FEC in standby mode by turning off voltage regulators and not reporting any warnings/errors.
- Radiation environment precautions:
 - Hamming coded ADC threshold settings.
 - Hamming coded DAC values.
 - o TMR of configuration/status register.
- Configurable automatic update of DAC.
- Thresholds, ADC values and DAC values stored in memories.
- Main functional changes from HUST PCM v2.x.
 - Removed of USB communication.
 - o Removed of Board ID register.
 - o Included Hamming encoding and TMR of static registers/memories.
 - Some register remapping.
 - o Thresholds and ADC values stored in memories.

Version 3.1 (11.09.2007)

- Added high and low ADC threshold memory.
- Added new module for verifying ADC values.
- Remapped most register adresses.
- Configurable number of times (1-3) of same threshold error before interrupt is flagged.
- Added two registers to decide if adc values will be treated as current or voltages.
- The continuously reading of ADC default disabled.
- Removed the error testing for illegal addresses (all addresses are ok, but will not return anything if not defined).
- Added an unlock register to make it possible to overwrite certain status registers for debug purposes.
- Changed default state of Slow Control Slave dout from 0 to 1 (Bug introduced in 3.0).
- Bugfix of DAC interface in case of hamming error in last channel of each DAC.

Version 3.2 (03.10.2007)

- Problem with Slow Control Communication attempted solved by making the slave more robust:
 - The slow control now decodes all info on the FC bus no matter if the card address is correct or not. This is done to make the slow control busy hence masking it for any fake start conditions on the bus. The *sda_out* line and the internal *we* signal is masked with a card address ok signal.

- o Added timeout counters for Slow Control Transactor and Receiver.
- Rewrote state machine in FC bus slave to reduce the amount of combinatorics.
- Added *sda_out* line to csr3 register for debug.
- Rewrote state machines in ADC interface to reduce the amount of combinatorics.

Version 3.3 (17.10.2007)

- Included support for Sparse Readout:
 - Exact copy of TPC version with a minor change to account for the less ALTROs in PHOS and the special ALTRO addressing of PHOS (0, 2, 3 & 4).
 - Hitmap transmitted by the use of dstb that is a gated version of the readout clock.
 - Added the needed functionality on the driver module to support the Board Controller being ALTRO bus master.
 - o Added the needed registers addresses for Sparse Readout. Exact copy of TPC version
 - o Rewrote ALTRO interface to one single module with the aim of making it more robust.
 - Minor change in drivers module.
- Added another timeout counter for the Slow Control Module and made a count of timeout conditions available in the register map.
- Added a debug register with information on the state of the *sda* line and *test_mg* input.

Version 3.4 (31.10.2007)

- Added debug counters and registers in the ALTRO interface module:
- Counters for number of received strobes, and number of generated acks.
- Information stored concerning the last acked address, and last address not acked.
- Added metastability filters on all control signals and address on the ALTRO Bus in an attempt to make it even more robust.
- The problem with the occasional timeout on the ALTRO bus is still present, but testing has shown the time-out occurs when the Board Controller receives not valid addresses (for some reason). This proves that with a high certainty the problem is not related to the Board Controller.

Version 3.5 (30.03.2008)

- Added registers on the GTL bus drivers to remove the possibility of glitches on the drivers.
- Changed start condition of the readout command detect state machine to make it behave better in ppr simulations.
- Removed debug counters and metastability filter on ALTRO interface, since it had no effect.

D.5 RCU support FPGA firmware

D.5.1 Tables

| Register name | Address | Туре | Description |
|------------------------------------|---------|------|--|
| Command(15:0) | 0xB000 | W | Writing to this register triggers a command |
| | | | execution. See Table D-16: for available |
| Command SM(15:0) | 0vB002 | \\/ | Writing to this register triggers a command |
| | 0,002 | vv | execution for the selectMAP. See Table D-17: for |
| | | | available commands |
| Actel_Reset | 0xB003 | Т | Same as RCU_Reset but only for RCU support |
| _ | | | FPGA |
| Status(11:0) | 0xB100 | R | Read: Status Register. |
| | | | $(11:8) \rightarrow \text{Stop Power Up Code}$ |
| | | | (7) \rightarrow Null pointer in Flash |
| | | | (6) \rightarrow Config Controller busy (5) \rightarrow Net Lead |
| | | | $(3) \rightarrow \text{Not Useu}$ $(4) \rightarrow \text{Selectman IF busy}$ |
| | | | $(3.0) \rightarrow (1 \text{ ast}) \text{ Active Cmd}$ |
| | | | hA – Init Config |
| | | | hB – Scrub |
| | | | hC – Scrub Cont |
| | | | hD – Rb Frame |
| | | | hE – Rb Frame Cont |
| Error(7:0) | 0xB101 | R | Read: Error Register. |
| | | | (7) \rightarrow Selectmap RAM Parity Error |
| | | | (6) \rightarrow Flash RAM Parity Error |
| | | | $(5) \rightarrow \text{Not Used}$ |
| | | | $(4) \rightarrow \text{Not Used}$ |
| | | | (2) \rightarrow Sman Unknown Cmd |
| | | | (1) \rightarrow Smap busy Not Asserted Error |
| | | | (0) \rightarrow Smap Done Failed |
| Version_Number(15:0) | 0xB102 | R | Firmware version: |
| | | | (15:8) \rightarrow Major Number |
| | | | (7:0) \rightarrow Minor Number |
| Input_Data(15:0) | 0xB103 | RW | Data to write to RCU support FPGA. Used as |
| | | | configuration data for specifics commands, |
| | | | decided by the command how it should be |
| $DB = \Gamma_{rr} C_{rr} t (15:0)$ | 0,0104 | D | Interpreted |
| RB_EIICHI(15.0) | 086104 | ĸ | verification of Xilinx Configuration Memory |
| RB Err FrameNumber | 0xB105 | R | Last frame number with error (as given by the |
| (11:0) | 0,12100 | | frame sequence stored in the Flash Memory |
| (| | | Device) |
| RB_FrameNumber | 0xB106 | R | Last frame being verified (as given by the frame |
| (11:0) | | | sequence stored in the Flash Memory Device) |
| RB_numOfCycles(15:0) | 0xB107 | R | Number of times a scrubbing cycle or a complete |
| | | | Frame by Frame readback cycle (all frames) has |
| | | | been done. |
| Stop Power Up Code | 0xB112 | W | Writing X"A" to this register prevents the RCU |
| | | | support FPGA from trying to automatically |
| | | | configure the Xilinx if sm_done is low |
| Register name | Address | Туре | Description |
|---------------------|----------|------|---|
| Flash_Interface | 0xB200 – | RW | 512x16 RAM block used for Flash Memory Device |
| _Memory(15:0) | 0xB3FF | | Communication |
| SelectMAP_Interface | 0xB400 – | RW | 512x16 RAM block used for selectMAP Bus |
| _Memory(15:0) | 0xB5FF | | Communication |
| | <i>,</i> | | |

Table D-15: Externally accessible registers.

| Command | Value | Data register (0xB103) | Description |
|--------------|--------|---|---|
| CLEAR_ERROR | 0x0001 | Not Used | Clears error register, and brings FW out of an illegal state. Must be done if error has occurred. |
| CLEAR_STAT | 0x0002 | Not Used | Clears status register and counters |
| INIT_CONFIG | 0x0004 | Not Used | Initial configuration of Xilinx from Flash |
| SCRUB | 0x0010 | Not Used | Scrub Xilinx one time. |
| SCRUB_CONT | 0x0020 | Num of times to run. If zero then run continuously until abort. | Scrub Continuously from Flash |
| RBFRAME | 0x0100 | Not Used | Read back single frame from Xilinx and clear error if found, always starting with first frame stored in Flash Memory Device, and continue with next frame on subsequent executions. |
| RBFRAME_CONT | 0x0200 | Num of times to run. If zero then run continuously until abort. | Continuously read back Xilinx and clear error if found |
| ABORT | 0x8000 | Not Used | Aborts ongoing operation |

Table D-16: Main Command Register (0xB000).

| Command | Value | Data register (0xB103) | Description |
|-------------|-------|--|---|
| INIT_XIL | 0x01 | Not Used | Do init procedure of Xilinx. Will erase the content of the Xilinx configuration memory. |
| STARTUP_XIL | 0x02 | Not Used | Do startup procedure of Xilinx (toggle cclk a number of times while <i>cs_b</i> is low) |
| WRITE_XIL | 0x04 | Data to be written | Write a 16 bit word to selectMAP IF in two subsequent 8 bit writes. |
| READ_XIL | 0x08 | Number of 16 bit words to read. If this register is 0, only 1 read op is performed. | Read 16 bits of data from the selectMAP Bus. (Working only if a correct command sequence has been written to the Xilinx first) |
| ABORT_XIL | 0x10 | Not Used | Issue abort sequence |

Table D-17: SelectMAP Command Register (0xB002).

D.5.2 Version Change Log

Version 1.0 (Dec 2005)

- The first working revision of the RCU support FPGA firmware.
- Flash interface that supports all atomic commands included, including a special verify method.
- Initial configuration.
- Direct selectMAP mode tested and verified.

Version 1.1 (13.02 2006)

- Bug fix in direct Flash mode tested and verified working.
- Version register added. address = hB200 (b8'Majornumber & b8'Minornumber).
- Rearranged Xilinx programming to handle 16 bits words instead of 32 bit words as Flash reads only 16 bits and speeded up the process.
- Read of Xilinx selectMAP interface is verified working using normal operation mode.
- Verify Flash method removed.
- Status register updated with more status/error information.
- If circuit comes into error condition, then everything is halted until error condition is cleared. (0xB000 = 0x0).
- Corrected a bug in the memory mapped interface that made the circuit hang after a "no target answer" transaction.
- Added continuously scrubbing and abort command.

Version 1.2 (25.04 2006)

- Flash interface and selectMAP interface can be generically selected to be included.
- Scrubbing of complete configuration supported:
 - o Single.
 - o Continuous until abort.
 - Continuous # number of cycles.
- Frame by frame readback, verification and correction supported:
 - Single step. One frame at the time.
 - o Continuous until abort. Runs complete cycles.
 - Continuous # number of times. Runs complete cycles.
- Counters for Number of Readback Verification errors and number of cycles added.
- Register for frame with last RB error added. (As given by the sequence the frames are stored in the Flash).
- Register for frame being verified added. (As given by the sequence the frames are stored in the Flash).
- Status register rearranged.
- Error register added.
- Command register rearranged.
- Clear error and clear status added.
- Added SelectMAP Command register.
- Added Flash Command register.
- Flash interface (and DCS control) on RCU support FPGA removed due to space limitations. Can only read Flash, while the DCS board handles the rest.
- Removed delay when in between scrub cycles.

Version 1.3 (28.08 2006)

- Corrected critical timing issues when doing frame by frame read-back verification.
- Cleaned up state machine in Configuration Controller module.
- Added LUTs and pipelined the readback error counter.
- Synchronized the input control lines for the selectMAP bus.
- Relaxed the timing on the selectMAP interface.
- A bit slower operation but timing is now good.
- Removed register for reading the last address being written to.
- Changed reset register address to 0xB003.
- Fixed a bug when clearing error register.
- Set continuous scrubbing to read pointer between scrub cycles to refresh registers.
- The memories are not in the data-path from the Flash Memory Device to the SelectMAP bus anymore they are only readable from the DCS board.
- Added power up detection module that start initial configuration.
- Added stop code register for stopping power up detection module from trying to reconfigure.
- Added address generator module to save area.
- Added new generic variable to select type of Flash Memory Device (BB or BT).
- Added new memory mapped interface module without support for Flash interface on RCU support FPGA (selected by generics).
- Added synchronizers for the control lines of the Flash Memory Device in direct Flash mode to deal with timing issues.
- Added *f_rynby* line to DCS board in direct Flash mode.
- Added output *seu_error* on *dcs_ctrl3* in normal operation mode.

Version 1.4 (14.11.2007)

- Bugfix concerning the mode settings. The error led the RCU support FPGA to go into selectMAP mode when rebooting the DCS board. This also led the *prog_b* line to go low long enough to sometimes erase the Xilinx.
- The *seu_error* flag is inverted so that default state is high.
- Extra robustness has been added to reset line so that the reset must be low for at least 125 ns for the RCU support FPGA to reset. This is done to make sure glitches do not reset the RCU support FPGA.
- Corrected a bug that made the scrubbing counter in continuous scrubbing mode increment by 2, instead of 1.

D.6 Trigger Receiver Module

D.6.1 Trigger Receiver Firmware Tables

| Register name | Address | Туре | Description | |
|-------------------------|---------|------|--|--|
| Control[23:0] | 0x4000 | RŴ | [0] Serial B channel on/off Default: 1 | |
| | | | [1] Disable_error_masking 0 | |
| | | | [2] Enable Rol decoding 0 | |
| | | | [3] L0 support 1 | |
| | | | [4:7] (Not Used) | |
| | | | [8] L2a FIFO storage mask 1 | |
| | | | [9] L2r FIFO storage mask 1 | |
| | | | [10] L2 Timeout FIFO storage mask 1 | |
| | | | [11] L1a message mask 1 | |
| | | | [12] Enable Input Trigger Mask 0 | |
| | | | [13:15] (Not Used) | |
| | | | [16] Bunch_counter overnow - | |
| | | | [17] RUN ACUVE - | |
| | | | [18] busy (receiving sequence) - | |
| | | | [19] NOLOSEU [23:20] CDH version 0v2 | |
| Modulo Posot | 0×4001 | т | 25.20 CDTTVEISION 0X2 | |
| Rol Config1[17:0] | 0x4001 | | Definition of what region of interest the BCI is a | |
| Rol_Conig [[17.0] | 084002 | RVV | part of (depends on the sector). Bit 17:0 | |
| Pol Config2[17:0] | 0v4003 | D\\/ | Definition of what region of interest the PCI is a | |
| Ku_comg2[17.0] | 0,4003 | | part of (depends on the sector). Bit 35:18 | |
| Posot Countors | 0×4004 | т | Write to this registers will reset the counters in the | |
| Reset Counters | 0,4004 | 1 | module | |
| Issue Testmode | 0×4005 | т | Debug: Issues testmode sequence. Note that | |
| | 0,4000 | | serialB channel input MUST be disabled when | |
| | | | using this feature | |
| 1 1 Latency[15:0] | 0x4006 | RW | [15:12] Uncertainty region +- N_default value 0x2 | |
| | 0,1000 | | (50 ns) | |
| | | | [11:0] Latency from L0 to L1, default value 0x0D4 | |
| | | | (5.3 us) | |
| L2 Latency[31:0] | 0x4007 | RW | [15:0] Max Latency from BC0 to L2, default value | |
| _ ,1 ; | | | 0x4E20 (500 us) | |
| | | | [31:16] Min Latency from BC0 to L2, default value | |
| | | | 0x0C80 (80 us) | |
| Rol_Latency[31:0] | 0x4009 | RW | [15:0] Max Latency from BC0 to Rol msg | |
| | | | [31:16] Min Latency from BC0 to Rol msg | |
| L1_msg_latency[31:0] | 0x400A | RW | [15:0] Max Latency from BC0 to L1 msg, default | |
| | | | value 0x0028 (1 us) | |
| | | | [31:16] Min Latency from BC0 to L1 msg, default | |
| | | | value 0x0F8 (6,2 us) | |
| Pre_pulse_counter[15:0] | 0x400B | R | Number of decoded pre-pulses. | |
| BCID_Local[11:0] | 0x400C | R | Number of bunchcrossings at arrival of L1 trigger. | |
| L0_counter[15:0] | 0x400D | R | Number of L0 triggers | |
| L1_counter[15:0] | 0x400E | R | Number of L1 triggers | |
| L1_msg_counter[15:0] | 0x400F | R | Number of successfully decoded L1a messages | |
| L2a_counter[15:0] | 0x4010 | R | Number of successfully decoded L2a messages | |
| L2r_counter[15:0] | 0x4011 | R | Number of successfully decoded L2r messages | |
| Rol_counter[15:0] | 0x4012 | R | Number of successfully decoded Rol messages | |
| Bunchcounter[11:0] | 0x4013 | R | Debug: Number of bunchcrossings | |
| hammingErrorCnt[31:0] | 0x4016 | R | [15:0] Number of single bit hamming errors [31:16] | |
| | | | Number of double bit hamming errors | |

| Register name | Address | Type | Description |
|------------------------|---------|------|--|
| ErrorCnt[31:0] | 0x4017 | R | [15:0] Number of message decoding errors [31:16] Number of errors related to sequence and |
| | | | timeouts. |
| Buffered_events[4:0] | 0x4020 | R | Number of events stored in the FIFO. |
| DAQ_Header01[31:0] | 0x4021 | R | Latest received DAQ Header 1 |
| DAQ_Header02[31:0] | 0x4022 | R | Latest received DAQ Header 2 |
| DAQ_Header03[31:0] | 0x4023 | R | Latest received DAQ Header 3 |
| DAQ_Header04[31:0] | 0x4024 | R | Latest received DAQ Header 4 |
| DAQ_Header05[31:0] | 0x4025 | R | Latest received DAQ Header 5 |
| DAQ_Header06[31:0] | 0x4026 | R | Latest received DAQ Header 6 |
| DAQ_Header07[31:0] | 0x4027 | R | Latest received DAQ Header 7 |
| Event_inio[17.0] | 0x4028 | ĸ | [0] Rol enabled [1] Region of Interest announced (=ESR) [2] Rol received [3] Within region of interest [4:7] Calibration/SW trigger type (= RoC) [8] Software trigger event [9] Calibration trigger event [10] Event has L2 Reject trigger [11] Event has L2 Accept trigger [12] Include payload [17:13] SCLK phase when (L0/L1)trigger arrives |
| Event_error[24:0] | 0x4029 | R | Latest Received Event error conditions: [0] Serial B Stop Bit Error [1] Single Bit Hamming Error Individually Addr. [2] Double Bit Hamming Error Broadcast. [4] Double Bit Hamming Error Broadcast. [5] Unknown Message Address Received [6] Incomplete L1a Message [7] Incomplete L2a Message [8] Incomplete Rol Message [9] TTCrx Address Error (not X"0003") [10] Spurious L0 [11] Missing L0 [12] Spurious L1 [13] Boundary L1 [14] Missing L1 [15] L1a message arrives outside legal timeslot [16] L1a message missing/timeout [17] L2 message arrives outside legal timeslot [18] L2 message arrives outside legal timeslot [19] Rol message arrives outside legal timeslot [20] Rol message missing/timeout [21] Prepulse error (=0; possible future use) [22] L1a message content error [23] L2 message content error [24] Rol message content error |
| L1_MessageHeader[11:0] | 0x4030 | R | Debug: Latest received L1a message |
| L1_MessageData1[11:0] | 0x4031 | R | Debug: Latest received L1a message |
| L1_MessageData2[11:0] | 0x4032 | R | Debug: Latest received L1a message |
| L1_MessageData3[11:0] | 0x4033 | R | Debug: Latest received L1a message |
| L1_MessageData4[11:0] | 0x4034 | R | Debug: Latest received L1a message |
| L2aMessageHeader[11:0] | 0x4035 | R | Debug: Latest received L2a Message |
| L2aMessageData1[11:0] | 0x4036 | R | Debug: Latest received L2a Message |
| L2aMessageData2[11:0] | 0x4037 | R | Debug: Latest received L2a Message |
| L2aMessageData3[11:0] | 0x4038 | R | Debug: Latest received L2a Message |

| Register name | Address | Туре | Description |
|------------------------|---------|------|---|
| L2aMessageData4[11:0] | 0x4039 | R | Debug: Latest received L2a Message |
| L2aMessageData5[11:0] | 0x403A | R | Debug: Latest received L2a Message |
| L2aMessageData6[11:0] | 0x403B | R | Debug: Latest received L2a Message |
| L2aMessageData7[11:0] | 0x403C | R | Debug: Latest received L2a Message |
| L2rMessageHeader[11:0] | 0x403D | R | Debug: Latest received L2r Message |
| RolMessageHeader[11:0] | 0x403E | R | Debug: Latest received Rol Message |
| RolMessageData1[11:0] | 0x403F | R | Debug: Latest received Rol Message |
| RolMessageData2[11:0] | 0x4040 | R | Debug: Latest received Rol Message |
| RolMessageData3[11:0] | 0x4041 | R | Debug: Latest received Rol Message |
| FIFO_read_enable | 0x4080 | Т | Debug: Triggers a readout pulse to FIFO |
| FIFO_DAQHeader[31:0] | 0x4081 | R | Debug: Output of FIFO |

Table D-18: List of registers that can be accessed externally. Note that the registers marked debug can be excluded by setting the generic include_debug_registers to false, but during the development of HW/FW they come in handy for testing and verification. Excluding them will decrease the number of CLBs used by the module significantly (approximately 20% reduction for Xilinx Virtex-2 pro XC2VP7).

| Bit | Name | Туре | Explanation | |
|-------|---------------------------------|------|--|--|
| 0 | Enable Input | RW | Enables or disables the Channel A and Channel B inputs. <i>Default enabled</i> | |
| 1 | Disable Error Masking | RW | This switch disables the masking of all triggers/messages received outside legal time windows. <i>Default disabled.</i> | |
| 2 | Enable Rol decoding | RW | Enables the check and verification of Rol messages. Default disabled | |
| 3 | L0 support | RW | Enables the L1a line decoder to decode either L0/L1a or only L1a. <i>Default enabled L0 & L1a</i> | |
| 4:7 | Not Used | - | - | |
| 8 | L2a FIFO storage mask | RW | 0: Events with L2a triggers are not stored in the FIFO 1: Events with L2a triggers are stored in the FIFO. (default) | |
| 9 | L2r FIFO storage mask | RW | 0: Events with L2r triggers are not stored in the FIFO 1: Events with L2r triggers are stored in the FIFO. (default) | |
| 10 | L2 Timeout FIFO storage mask | RW | 0: Events with L2 timeout are not stored in the FIFO1: Events with L2 timeout are stored in the FIFO. (default) | |
| 11 | L1a message mask | RW | 0: Error situations concerning the L1a message are not reported 1: Error situations are reported. (default) | |
| 12 | Enable trigger input mask | RW | 0: all triggers accepted (default) 1: trigger sequences masked if ddl_rdy_rx is not set, meb_full is set or number of events equals 8 | |
| 13:15 | Not Used | - | - | |
| 16 | Bunch_counter overflow | R | Overflow of Bunchcounter – no reception of bunchcount reset messages. 0: ok 1: overflow | |
| 17 | Run Active | R | Run Active as set by SOR and EOR events | |
| 18 | Busy | R | The module is busy receiving a trigger sequence | |
| | | | 0: not busy 1: busy | |
| 19 | Not Used | - | | |
| 23:20 | CDH Version | R | Version of the CDH generated by the Trigger Module | |

Table D-19: Definition of the control register.

| Bit | Name | Explanation |
|-------|---------------------------|---|
| 0 | Rol Enabled | Information if RoI decoding is enabled by user. |
| | | 0: disabled |
| | | 1: enabled |
| 1 | Region of Interest | True if the ESR bit is set in L1a message and the RoI decoding |
| | announced | is enabled, this bit is set, |
| | | 0: Rol not announced or disabled |
| 0 | Del received | 1: Rol expected and enabled. |
| 2 | Rol received | I rue if a Roi message is received when Roi decoding is |
| | | 0: Not received or disabled |
| | | 1: Received |
| 3 | Within region of interest | True if the received Rol message is matching the Rol config |
| - | | register. For TPC decoding this is the case if bit n is '1' in both |
| | | registers. |
| | | 0: Not within region of interest or Rol disabled. |
| | | 1: Within Rol and Rol enabled. |
| 4:7 | Calibration/SW trigger | Equal to the RoC bits in L1a message, telling what kind of |
| | type | software/calibration trigger that is received. The only defined so |
| | | far are SOR and EOR. |
| | | OXE : Start of Run |
| 0 | Software trigger event | UXF. Ellu ULKUI |
| 0 | Soltware trigger event | 1 2a message respectively |
| | | 0: Normal trigger |
| | | 1: Software trigger |
| 9 | Calibration trigger event | True if pre-pulse has arrived – independent of CIT flag. |
| | | 0: Not a calibration trigger (no pre-pulse) |
| | | 1: calibration trigger |
| 10 | L2r received | True if stored event has ended with an Level 2 reject trigger |
| 11 | L2a received | True if stored event has ended with an Level 2 accept trigger |
| 12 | Include payload | High if the CDH should generate payload. This is logically equal |
| | | to: L2a_received and not missing_L1 and not missing_L0 |
| 17:13 | SCLK phase | Gives the phase of the sampling clock when a trigger has |
| | | arrived. |

Table D-20: Event information register with information concerning last event. The same information is found as the first word in the FIFO.

| Bit | Name | Explanation |
|-----|--------------------------|---|
| 0 | Channel B Stop Bit Error | Serial B stop bit is 0 when it is expected to be 1 |
| 1 | Single Bit Hamming | Single bit hamming error found and corrected in individually |
| | Error Individually Addr | addressed message |
| 2 | Double Bit Hamming | Double bit hamming error found in individually addressed |
| | Error Individually Addr | message, not possible to correct |
| 3 | Single Bit Hamming | Single bit hamming error found and corrected in broadcast |
| | Error Broadcast | message |
| 4 | Double Bit Hamming | Double bit hamming error found in broadcast message, not |
| 5 | Linknown Message | If an individually addressed message has arrived with an address |
| U | Address Received | that is not recognized |
| 6 | Incomplete L1a message | High when less than 4 L1 data words follows a L1 header |
| 7 | Incomplete L2a Message | High when less than 7 L2a data words follows a L2a header |
| 8 | Incomplete Rol Message | High when less than 3 Rol data words follows a Rol header |
| 9 | TTCrx Address Error | High if the TTCrx address is unequal to 0x8001 |
| 10 | Spurious L0 | High if a L0 trigger comes outside of the legal time window for a L0 |
| 11 | Missing L0 | High if the L0 trigger is missing |
| 12 | Spurious L1 | High if a L1 trigger comes outside of the legal time window for a L1 |
| 13 | Boundary L1 | High if a L1 trigger is in the uncertainty region set by the L1 |
| | | Latency register |
| 14 | Missing L1 | High if the L1 trigger is missing |
| 15 | L1a message arrives | High if all or part of the L1a message arrives outside of the legal |
| | outside legal timeslot | time window for a L1a message |
| 16 | L1a message | High if the L1a message does not start to arrive within the legal |
| | missing/timeout | time window for a L1a message |
| 17 | L2 message arrives | High if all or part of the L2a/L2r message arrives outside of the |
| | outside legal timeslot | legal time window for a L2a/L2r message |
| 18 | L2 message | High if the L2a/L2r message does not start to arrive within the legal |
| 10 | | time window for a L2a/L2r message |
| 19 | outside legal timeslot | time window for a Rol message. |
| 20 | Rol message | High if the Rol message does not start to arrive within the legal |
| | missing/timeout | time window for a Rol message. |
| 21 | Prepulse error | Not Set |
| 22 | L1a message content | High if one of the following occur: |
| | error | CIT L1 = 0 after arrival of pre-pulse |
| | | $L1 \overline{S}wC = 0$ when CIT $L1 = 1$ |
| | | L1_SwC /= L2_SwC |
| | | CIT_L1 /= CIT_L2a |
| | | ESR_L1 /= ESR_L2a |
| 23 | L2 message content | High if one of the following occur: |
| | error | BCID_L2a/L2r > 3563 |
| | | CIT_L2 = 0 after arrival of pre-pulse |
| | | $L2_SwC = 0$ when CIT_L2 = 1 |
| | | $L1_SWC /= L2_SWC$ |
| | | CII_L1/= CII_L2a |
| 0.1 | | ESK_L1 /= ESK_L2a |
| 24 | Rol message content | High if the following occur: |
| | error | BCID_R0I > 3563 |

Table D-21: Event error register with error information concerning last event. The same information is found as the second word in the FIFO.

| Bit | Name | Explanation |
|-----|----------------------------------|---|
| 0 | Trigger Overlan Error | Spurious I 0 error |
| 1 | Trigger 10 missing error | Missing LO error |
| 2 | Data parity error | Not handled by trigger receiver (= '0') |
| 3 | Control parity error | Not handled by trigger receiver $(= 0)$ |
| 4 | Trigger information unavailable | Incomplete I 1a message I |
| 7 | | Incomplete L 2a Message I |
| | | Incomplete Rol Message I |
| | | L1a message missing/timeout l |
| | | L2 message missing/timeout |
| | | Rol message missing/timeout |
| 5 | Front-end electronics error | Not handled by trigger receiver (= '0') |
| 6 | HLT decision flag | Not handled by trigger receiver (= '0') |
| 7 | HLT payload flag | Not handled by trigger receiver (= '0') |
| 8 | DDG payload flag | Not handled by trigger receiver (= '0') |
| 9 | Trigger L1 time violation | Spurious L1 |
| 10 | Trigger L2 timeout and L2 timing | NOT Missing L1 & |
| | violation | L2 message arrives outside legal timeslot |
| | | L2 message missing/timeout |
| 11 | Pre-pulse or Pre-trigger error | Not handled as the programmable pre-pulse |
| | | BunchCrossing interval/range can not currently be |
| | | detected (= '0') |
| 12 | I rigger error | Serial B Stop bit Error |
| | | Single Bit Hamming Error Individually Addressed |
| | | Single Bit Hamming Error Proadcast I |
| | | Double Bit Hamming Error Broadcast I |
| | | Unknown Message Address Received I |
| | | I 1a message Data Error I |
| | | L2a Message Data Error I |
| | | Rol Message Data Error |
| | | L1a message arrives outside legal timeslot |
| | | L2 message arrives outside legal timeslot |
| | | Rol message arrives outside legal timeslot |
| | | Rol message missing/timeout |
| | | BCID error (local unlike received) |
| | | L1a message content error |
| | | L2 message content error |
| 40 | | Kol message content error |
| 13 | I rigger L1 missing error | NISSING L1 & |
| 14 | Multi avaat buffan anan | NOT L2 message missing/timeout |
| 14 | | Not nandled by trigger receiver (= '0'). |
| 15 | Reserved for future use. | (= ∪) |

Table D-22: The CDH error and status word found in CDH word 4. The errors that are not handled by the trigger receiver are explicitly marked.

D.6.2 Tables Defining Inputs to the Trigger Receiver Module

Except for Table D-32 and Table D-33, all tables in this section are from [9, 34, 48] The tables describing the hamming code are based on the C source code files of the LTU.

| star t | FMT | Cmd/Data [7:0] | Hmg[4:0] | stop |
|-----------|-----|----------------|----------|------|
| 0 | 0 | ddddddd | eeeee | 1 |

Table D-23: Broadcast message on serial B channel. FMT bit is 0 for a broadcast message.

| Bit | 76 | 52 | 1 | 0 | | |
|-----|---|----------------|------------------|------------------|--|--|
| | User message | System message | Eventcount reset | Bunchcount Reset | | |
| | Table D-24: Definition of serial channel B broadcast message. | | | | | |

| star t | FMT | TTCrx_addr[13:0] | Ext addr | 1 | Subaddr [3:0] | Data [11:0] | Hmg[6:0] | stop |
|-----------|-----|------------------|-------------|---|------------------|-------------|----------|------|
| 0 | 1 | ttttttttttt | i | 1 | aaaa | dddddddddd | eeeeeee | 1 |

Table D-25: Individual addressed message on serial channel B. FMT bit is 1 for an individual addressed message.

| Subaddress[3:0] | Type of message |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|
| 0x0 | Reserved |
| 0x1 | L1 header |
| 0x2 | L1 data |
| 0x3 | L2 accept header |
| 0x4 | L2 accept data |
| 0x5 | L2 reject header |
| 0x6 | Rol header |
| 0x7 | Rol data |
| 0x8 | Fee reset |
| 0x9 - 0xB | Reserved for the CTP |
| 0xC – 0xF | Available for sub-detectors |

Table D-26: Type of messages received as individual addressed serial channel B transmissions. From [9], additionally including Fee reset which is defined in [48].

| Word | 1512 | 11 | 10 | 96 | 5 | 4 | 32 | 10 |
|------|-----------|--------------|-----|----------|-----|-------|-------------|------------|
| 1 | L1 header | Spare bit | CIT | RoC[3:0] | ESR | L1SwC | L1Class[49: | 46] |
| 2 | L1 data | L1Class[45:3 | 4] | | | | | |
| 3 | L1 data | L1Class[33:2 | 2] | | | | | |
| 4 | L1 data | L1Class[21:1 | 0] | | | | | |
| 5 | L1 data | L1Class[9:0] | | | | | | Spare bits |

Table D-27: Level 1 message format.

| Word | 1512 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 72 | 10 | |
|------|------------|------------|----------------|--------|---------------|---------------------|----------------|--|
| 1 | L2a header | BCID[11:0] | | | | | | |
| 2 | L2a data | OrbitID | OrbitID[23:12] | | | | | |
| 3 | L2a data | OrbitID | [11:0] | | | | | |
| 4 | L2a data | spare | ESR | CIT | L2SwC | L2Cluster[5:0] | L2Class[49:48] | |
| 5 | L2a data | L2Class | s[47:36] (| physic | s) Detecto | or[2312] (software) | | |
| 6 | L2a data | L2Class | s[35:24] (| physic | s) Detecto | or[110] (software) | | |
| 7 | L2a data | L2Class | s[23:12] (| physic | s) 0 (softw | ware) | | |
| 8 | L2a data | L2Class | s[11:0] (p | hysics |) 0 (softwa | are) | | |
| | | | | | | | | |

Table D-28: Level 2 accept message format.

| Word | 1512 | 110 | | | | |
|--|------------|------------|--|--|--|--|
| 1 | L2r header | BCID[11:0] | | | | |
| Table D-29: Level 2 reject message format. | | | | | | |

| Word | 1512 | 110 |
|------|------------|-----------------|
| 1 | Rol header | BCID[11:0] |
| 2 | Rol data | Rol_data[35:24] |
| 3 | Rol data | Rol_data[23:12] |
| 4 | Rol data | Rol_data[11:0] |
| | | |

Table D-30: Region of Interest message format.

| Abbreviation | Explanation |
|-----------------|--|
| CIT | Calibration trigger flag. This flag should be high if the trigger sequence is a calibration trigger sequence hence is preceded by a pre-pulse. |
| RoC | Readout Control. Controls the readout mode of the sub-detector, but is also used for other purposes. For instance, the type of software trigger is defined by ROC. |
| L1SwC | Software trigger flag (Level 1 message). |
| L2Sw | Software trigger flag (Level 2 message). |
| ESR | Enable Segmented Readout. Enables the Region of Interest option if high. |
| BCID | Bunchcrossing ID. The number of the particle bunch involved in the collision. |
| Orbit ID | The number of times all bunches have travelled one orbit in the LHC ring since start of run. |
| L1Class/L2Class | Trigger class. The trigger class is defined by the parameters required to make up a trigger selection: trigger cluster, the set of trigger inputs, past/future protection requirements and a few other parameters. |
| Detector | The information concerning the participating sub-detectors (when software triggers). |
| Rol Data | Defining the Region of Interest. |

Table D-31: Definitions of the abbreviations in Table D-27, Table D-28, Table D-29 and Table D-30.

| Hamming bit | |
|-------------|--|
| h(0) | d(0) ⊕ d(1) ⊕ d(2) ⊕ d(3) |
| h(1) | d(0) ⊕ d(4) ⊕ d(5) ⊕ d(6) |
| h(2) | d(1) ⊕ d(2) ⊕ d(4) ⊕ d(5) ⊕ d(7) |
| h(3) | d(1) ⊕ d(3) ⊕ d(4) ⊕ d(6) ⊕ d(7) |
| h(4) | $h(0) \oplus h(1) \oplus h(2) \oplus h(3) \oplus d(0) \oplus d(1) \oplus d(2) \oplus d(3) \oplus d(4) \oplus d(5) \oplus d(6) \oplus d(7)$ |

Table D-32: 8 bit hamming coding as used in broadcast transmissions

| Hamming bit | |
|-------------|--|
| h(0) | $d(0) \oplus d(1) \oplus d(2) \oplus d(3) \oplus d(4) \oplus d(5)$ |
| h(1) | d(6) ⊕ d(7) ⊕ d(8) ⊕ d(9) ⊕ d(10) ⊕ d(11) ⊕ d(12) ⊕ d(13) ⊕ d(14) ⊕ d(15) ⊕ |
| | d(16) ⊕ d(17) ⊕ d(18) ⊕ d(19) ⊕ d(20) |
| h(2) | d(6) ⊕ d(7) ⊕ d(8) ⊕ d(9) ⊕ d(10) ⊕ d(11) ⊕ d(12) ⊕ d(13) ⊕ d(21) ⊕ d(22) ⊕ |
| | d(23) ⊕ d(24) ⊕ d(25) ⊕ d(26) ⊕ d(27) |
| h(3) | d(0) ⊕ d(1) ⊕ d(2) ⊕ d(6) ⊕ d(7) ⊕ d(8) ⊕ d(9) ⊕ d(14) ⊕ d(15) ⊕ d(16) ⊕ d(17) ⊕ |
| | d(21) ⊕ d(22) ⊕ d(23) ⊕ d(24) ⊕ d(28) ⊕ d(29) ⊕ d(30) |
| h(4) | d(0) ⊕ d(3) ⊕ d(4) ⊕ d(6) ⊕ d(7) ⊕ d(10) ⊕ d(11) ⊕ d(14) ⊕ d(15) ⊕ d(18) ⊕ d(19) |
| | ⊕ d(21) ⊕ d(22) ⊕ d(25) ⊕ d(26) ⊕ d(28) ⊕ d(29) ⊕ d(31) |
| h(5) | d(1) ⊕ d(3) ⊕ d(5) ⊕ d(6) ⊕ d(8) ⊕ d(10) ⊕ d(12) ⊕ d(14) ⊕ d(16) ⊕ d(18) ⊕ d(20) |
| | ⊕ d(21) ⊕ d(23) ⊕ d(25) ⊕ d(27) ⊕ d(28) ⊕ d(30) ⊕ d(31) |
| h(6) | $h(0) \oplus h(1) \oplus h(2) \oplus h(3) \oplus h(4) \oplus h(5) \oplus d(0) \oplus d(1) \oplus d(2) \oplus d(3) \oplus d(4) \oplus d(5)$ |
| | ⊕ d(6) ⊕ d(7) ⊕ d(8) ⊕ d(9) ⊕ d(10) ⊕ d(11) ⊕ d(12) ⊕ d(13) ⊕ d(14) ⊕ d(15) ⊕ |
| | d(16) ⊕ d(17) ⊕ d(18) ⊕ d(19) ⊕ d(20) ⊕ d(21) ⊕ d(22) ⊕ d(23) ⊕ d(24) ⊕ d(25) ⊕ |
| | d(26) ⊕ d(27) ⊕ d(28) ⊕ d(29) ⊕ d(30) ⊕ d(31) |
| Tabla D | 22:22 hit hamming odding as used in individual addressed |

Table D-33: 32 bit hamming coding as used in individual addressed transmissions.

D.6.3 Version Change Log

Version 1.0

- Decoding of serial B input.
- Broadcast messages.
- Individual addressed messages.
- Hamming decoding of serial Channel B message.
- Repair and count single bit errors.
- Count other errors.
- Generation of Level 2 accept, Level 2 reject and RoI trigger.
- Generation of eventcount reset and bunchcount reset from serial Channel B broadcast messages.
- Counters: Level 1 Accept, level 2 accept, level 2 reject and RoI triggers.
- Verification if L2a+L2r = L1a.
- Testmode that simulates arrival of serial B messages.
- Handling of transmission errors etc.
- Memory mapped interface.
- CDH outputs for data assembler.

Version 1.1

- Redesigned most parts of the module.
- Supports both RCU and BusyBox.
- Decoding serial Channel B input.
- Broadcast messages (bunchcount reset, eventcount reset, pre-pulse).
- Individual addressed messages (L1a, RoI, L2a, L2r).
- Decode Channel A line to L0 trigger and L1a trigger.

- Hamming decoding of serial B message.
- Report, repair and count single bit hamming errors.
- Report and count other errors, including double bit hamming errors, message decoding error and sequence validation errors.
- Generation of L0, L1a, L2a and L2r trigger.
- Decoding of RoI is optional and can be enabled in the Control/Status register.
- Status output showing if run is ongoing. (Between vanguard and rearguard trigger.)
- Counters: Internal bunchcounter, trigger counters, message counters and error counters.
- Reporting transmission errors etc.
- Reporting timeouts and sequence errors.
- Memory mapped interface.
- RCU Version with 32 bit bidirectional data-bus.
- BusyBox Version with 16 bit bidirectional data-bus.
- FIFO with header words and event information for data assembly.
- Generic debug-mode with possibility to read out FIFO from DCS board, more debug registers and a simple simulation of arrival of trigger sequences.

Version 1.2 (13.12.2007)

- Sample Channel A and serial Channel B on falling edge.
- Remake of L1a decode module to simplify it.
- Remake of Addressed message decoder:
 - o Added FEE reset decoding.
 - $\circ~$ It is now possible that messages come in between each other (L2H-L2D-L1H-L1D-L2D .. etc).
- Remake of Sequence Validator module so that the time windows can overlap to the extreme (this was not possible earlier.
- Some modifications to the Error and info register.
- Added Phase check module to store in what phase of the sampling clock the trigger arrives.
- Control registers slightly changed.
- All latencies now given with respect to L0 trigger instead of BC0.

Version 1.21 (29.05.2008)

- Corrected the version information in the CDH.
- Bugfix in the phase-check module. The stored phase is no longer cleared when an L2 trigger arrives.

Version 1.22 (30.05.2008)

• Added input *meb_depth* and a *meb_mask_enable* to control register. This will make it possible to constrain the FIFO to store only the number of header as multi event buffers. Any trigger sequences received if MEBs are full are masked completely.

- Removed input *meb_depth* and a *meb_mask_enable* to control register.
- Removed test for RoC = 0 when physics trigger as this was not correct.
- Added inputs *meb_full*, *ddl_rdy_rx* and *enable_trigger_input_mask* to control register. The *enable_trigger_input* mask will enable the *meb_full_flag* or the *ddl_rdy_rx* to mask out any incoming triggers. In addition it will constrain the FIFO to only be able to store 8 events.

D.7 Other Tables

| | Bit | [31:24] | [23:16] | [15:8] | [7:0] |
|------|-----|------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| Word | | | | | |
| 1 | | Data word [31:0] | | | |
| 2 | | Data word [23:0] | | | Data word [39:32] |
| 3 | | Data word [15:0] | | Data word [39:24] | |
| 4 | | Data word [7:0] | Data word [39:16] | | |
| 5 | | Data word [39:8] | | | |

Table D-34: Four 40 bit ALTRO data words are formatted into five 32 bit DAQ words. From [13].

Appendix E

Index

A Large Ion Collider Experiment. See ALICE A Toroidal LHC ApparatuS. See ATLAS Active Partial Reconfiguration, 62, 83, 85, 87, 89, 91, 92, 101, 102 ALICE, 15, 17, 18, 29, 81 ALICE detector, 15, 19, 151 ALICE TPC gas mixture, 20 Altera Excalibur FPGA, 40 Altera signalTAP, 131 ALTRO, 35, 36, 57, 70, 121, 124, 126 ALTRO bus, 68, 70, 71, 78, 106, 124, 134 ARM processor core, 40 ASIC, 61, 84 ATLAS, 17 Board Controller, 36, 47, 66, 68, 69, 70, 72, 74, 78, 80, 106, 124 broadcast message, 110, 113 bunchcrossing ID, 25, 117 BusyBox, 26, 43, 52, 61, 106, 119, 127, 149 CDH, 106, 108, 112, 113, 116, 117, 144 Central Trigger Processor. See CTP CERN, 15 CLB, 86 CMS, 17 Common Data Header. See CDH Compact Muon Solenoid. See CMS Concurrent Versioning System. See CVS Configuration Database, 29 Control Engine, 49, 144 Control Node, 64, 103, 129, 145 CTP, 24, 26, 43, 62, 105 cumulative effects, 23, 81 CVS, 153 DAQ, 24, 26, 27, 32, 64, 107, 116, 149 Data Acquisition. See DAQ data readout, 16, 19, 39, 44, 68, 106, 115, 121, 137, 142, 146 152 Data Readout Received Card. See D-RORC DCS, 29, 32, 47, 49, 64, 69, 100 DCS archive database, 29 DCS board, 32, 38, 39, 40, 41, 43, 47, 49, 50, 51, 52, 55, 56, 58, 60, 61, 92, 107, 109, 118, 152 DDL, 27, 32, 39 Destination Interface Unit. See DIU Detector Control System. See DCS

Detector Data Link. See DDL device drivers, 49, 52 DIU, 27 D-RORC, 27, 44, 127, 146 ECS, 24 ElectroMagnetic Calorimeter. See EMCal embedded computer, 5, 40 EMCal, 22, 26, 108 event, 19, 22, 24, 27, 31, 43, 103, 105, 107, 108, 111, 115, 116, 118, 122, 126, 142, 144, 146 event ID, 127, 128 Experiment Control System. See ECS FC bus, 68, 71, 78, 79, 134 FEC, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 42, 47, 64, 66, 68, 70, 74, 124, 137, 139, 150 Fee, 20, 21, 23, 26, 28, 29, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 39, 43, 81, 105, 108, 127, 144, 149, 152 FeeServer, 47, 49, 144 FMD, 22, 26, 70, 108 Forward Multiplicity Detector. See FMD FPGA, 16, 84 Actel ProASICplus APA075, 91 Altera Excalibur FPGA, 41 Xilinx Virtex-II Pro XC2VP7, 85 frame, 85, 87, 90, 93, 98, 99 Frame by Frame Readback, Verification and Correction, 92, 93, 95, 101, 138 Front End Card. See FEC Front-end electronics. See Fee functional verification, 131, 138 health monitoring, 36, 69, 70, 74 High Level Trigger. See HLT High Voltage Bias, 36, 68, 70, 72, 76 HLT, 24, 27, 28, 105 I²C, 51, 68, 72, 74, 78, 79 individually addressed message, 110, 113 Large Hadron Collider. See LHC LHC, 15, 26, 105, 142 LHC beauty. See LHCb LHCb, 17 Linux, 40, 42, 47, 49 Local Trigger Unit. See LTU LTU, 26, 44, 62, 118 MessageBuffer, 53, 54, 57, 58

mitigation technique, 5, 16, 68, 80, 83, 84, 90, 100, 103, 120, 141, 146, 152 Monitoring and Safety Module, 64, 65, 66 Orbit ID, 26 Oslo Cyclotron Laboratory, 140 PCB backplanes, 5, 34, 39 PHOS, 16, 21, 23, 26, 31, 33, 34, 36, 39, 40, 42, 52, 68, 70, 79, 81, 105, 134, 136, 141, 142, 143, 152 CPV, 21 EMC, 21 PHOton Spectrometer. See PHOS Quark Gluon Plasma, 15, 17, 18 radiation environment, 16, 20, 22, 31, 48, 79, 81, 84, 102, 139, 140, 152 RCU, 32, 33, 34, 36, 38, 48, 81, 84, 87, 100, 102, 106, 108, 152 RCU Communication Module, 41, 52, 53, 54, 55, 57, 63 RCU main FPGA, 39, 40, 47, 48, 52, 63, 64, 98, 100, 102, 104, 105, 107, 129, 134, 145 RCU Motherboard, 32, 39, 40, 54, 55, 60, 64, 83, 84, 91, 98, 107 RCU support FPGA, 40, 48, 52, 54, 55, 59, 60, 91, 92, 94, 98, 99, 100 Readout Control Unit. See readout electronics, 16 Readout Node, 31, 64, 103, 105, 106, 108, 116, 121, 122, 129, 145, 148 readout partition, 33, 34, 39, 66 Reconfiguration Network, 40, 48, 54, 102 Scrubbing, 87, 90, 92, 95, 101 selectMAP, 53, 60, 62, 88, 95, 99

SEU, 48, 79, 82, 85, 90, 103, 120, 146 Single Event Burnout, 82 single event effects, 23, 68, 81, 83 Single Event Latchup, 82 Single Event Upset. See SEU SIU, 27, 32, 38, 65 Source Interface Unit. See SIU Sparse Readout, 68, 69, 71, 105, 124, 125 state machine, 61, 80, 96, 98, 99, 100, 103, 114, 147 testbench, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 153 The Svedberg Laboratory, 140 Time Projection Chamber. See TPC TMR, 61, 79, 103, 120, 148 TPC, 16, 20, 23, 25, 31, 33, 35, 39, 40, 44, 52, 60, 64, 66, 68, 69, 79, 81, 102, 105, 127, 140, 141, 144, 152 Transition Radiation Detector. See TRD TRD, 22, 40, 51 trigger, 19, 22, 24, 27, 28, 32, 42, 60, 72, 105, 106, 107, 108, 109, 110, 112, 113, 114, 117, 121, 127, 134, 144, 152 Trigger Receiver Module, 106, 107, 108, 109, 112, 120, 128, 129 Trigger Region Unit. See TRU Trigger, Timing and Control. See TTC Trigger-OR, 40, 42, 43, 52, 61, 101 Triple Modular Redundancy. See TMR TRU, 32, 34, 36, 42, 43, 101 TTC, 24, 26, 32, 44, 105, 107, 108, 110, 116, 129, 141, 152 TTCrx, 51, 61, 62, 107, 109 Xilinx Chipscope Pro, 131

References

- 1. HEP Phase Diagram, GSI, Germany: http://www.gsi.de/fair/experiments/CBM/1intro.html
- 2. ALICE Collaboration (2004), *ALICE Physics Performance Report, Volume I.* Journal of Physics G: Nuclear and Particle Physics 30, p. 1517-1763, CERN, Switzerland
- 3. ALICE Collaboration (2008), ALICE Experiment at the CERN LHC, ALICE Technical Paper I (To be published), CERN, Switzerland
- 4. ALICE Collaboration (2000), *ALICE TPC Technical Design Report*, CERN, Switzerland. ISBN: 92-9083-155-3
- 5. ALICE Collaboration (1999), *Technical Design Report of the Photon* Spectrometer, CERN, Switzerland. ISBN: 92-9083-138-3
- 6. Tsiledakis, G. K. (2006). Scale Dependence of Mean Transverse Momentum Fluctuations at Top SPS Energy measured by the CERES experiment and studies of gas properties for the ALICE experiment, PhD Thesis, Fachbereich Physik, Technische Universität Darmstadt, Germany
- 7. Røed, K., et al. (2005). Irradiation tests of the complete ALICE TPC Front-End Electronics chain. in Proceedings of the 11th Workshop Electronics for LHC and Future Experiments. p. 165-169
- 8. Straume, B. H. (2006). *Strålingstester og utvikling av bestrålingsprosedyre for ALICE TPC-elektronikken (Language: Norwegian),* MSc Thesis, Department of Physics and Technology, University of Bergen, Norway
- 9. ALICE Collaboration (2004), ALICE Technical Design Report of the Trigger, Data Acquisition, High-Level Trigger and Control System, CERN. ISBN: 92-9083-217-7
- 10. Evans, D., et al. (2005). *The ALICE central trigger system*. in *Proceedings for the 14th IEEE-NPSS Real Time Conference*. p. 5 (on CD-ROM)
- 11. Timing, Trigger and Control (TTC) Systems for the LHC, CERN, Switzerland: *http://ttc.web.cern.ch/TTC/intro.html*
- 12. Gutierrez, C. G., et al. (2005). *The ALICE TPC readout control unit*. in *IEEE Nuclear Science Symposium Conference Record* p. 575-579
- 13. Gutiérrez, C. G. (2007). *Readout and control system for the ALICE TPC electronics*, PhD, Escuela Técnica Superior de Ingenieros Industriales y de Telecomunicación University of Cantabria, Spain
- 14. ALICE TPC Readout Chip User Manual (2002), CERN EP/ED. Available from: http://ep-ed-alice-tpc.web.cern.ch
- 15. Virtex-II Pro and Virtex-II Pro X Platform FPGAs: Complete Data Sheet, DS083 (v4.7) (2007), Xilinx Inc. Available from: http://www.xilinx.com
- 16. Virtex-II Pro and Virtex-II Pro X FPGA User Guide, UG012 (v4.2) (2007), Xilinx Inc. Available from: http://www.xilinx.com
- 17. Actel ProASIC^{PLUS®} Flash Family FPGAs, v5.5 (2007), Actel Corporation. Available from: http://www.actel.com

- 18. MX29LV640B T/B 64M-BIT [8M x 8/4M x 16] Single Voltage 3V Only Flash Memory Datasheet (2007), MXIC Macronix International Co., Ltd. Available from: http://www.macronix.com/
- 19. *Excalibur Devices, Hardware Reference Manual, Version 3.1* (2002), Altera. Available from: *http://www.altera.com*
- 20. Krawutschke, T. (2008). *Reliability and Redundancy of an Embedded System used in the Detector Control System of the ALICE Experiment*, PhD Thesis (to be published), Institute of Communication Engineering, University of Applied Sciences Cologne, Germany
- 21. Lattice ispMACH 4000V/B/C/Z Family 3.3V/2.5V/1.8V In-System Programmable SuperFAST High Density PLDs Datasheet (2003), Lattice Semiconductor Corporation. Available from: http://www.latticesemi.com/
- 22. Müller, H., et al. (2005). Trigger Region Unit for the ALICE PHOS Calorimeter. in Proceedings of the 11th Workshop Electronics for LHC and Future Experiments. p. 384 387
- 23. Karlsson, A. D. O. and Tröger, G. (2006) An interface solution at 53.76 Gb/s input bandwidth to a single Xilinx Virtex-II Pro FPGA a practical challenge. DOI: CERN-OPEN-2006-032
- 24. Bablok, S., et al. (2006). Front-End-Electronics Communication software for multiple detectors in the ALICE experiment. Nuclear Instruments and Methods in Physics Research Section A: Accelerators, Spectrometers, Detectors and Associated Equipment, Vol. 557(2): p. 631-638
- 25. Fehlker, D. (2007). Development and commissioning of a software environment for controlling and re-configuration of Xilinx Virtex FPGAs, Diploma Thesis, Faculty of Mathematics/Physics/Computer Science, Hochshule Mittweida (FH) University of Appplied Sciences, Germany
- 26. Kastensmidt, F. L., Carro, L., and Reis, R. (2006), *Fault-Tolerance Techniques for SRAM-based FPGAs*, Springer. ISBN: 0-387-31068-1
- 27. Lippmann, C., CERN, Switzerland, Private communication
- 28. 10-Bit Digital Temperature Sensor (AD7416) and Four Single-Channel ADCs (AD7417/AD7418), Rev.G (2004), Analog Devices. Available from: http://www.analog.com
- 29. Campagnolo, R., CERN, Switzerland, Private communication
- 30. Zeners BZX84C 3V3 BZX84C 33 Datasheet (2001), Fairchild Semiconductor Corporation. Available from: http://www.fairchildsemi.com
- 31. Maxim Low-Power, Low-Glitch, Octal 10-Bit Voltage-Output DACs with Serial Interface Datasheet (2001), Maxim Integrated Products. Available from: http://www.maxim-ic.com
- 32. The I2C-bus specification, version 2.1 (2001), Philips. Available from: http://www.semiconductors.philips.com
- 33. Carmichael, C., Caffrey, M., and Salazar, A. (2000) Correcting Single-Event Upsets Through Virtex Partial Configuration XAPP216 (v1.0) Available from: http://www.xilinx.com
- 34. Christiansen, J., et al. (2005). TTCrx Reference Manual, v 3.11, A Timing, Trigger and Control Receiver ASIC for LHC Detectors. CERN - EP/MIC

- 35. Solli, S. I. (2007). *Design of a trigger system interface for readout of the ALICE TPC/PHOS detectors*, MSc Thesis, Department of Physics, University of Oslo, Norway
- 36. F. Formenti, A. Kluge, and Vyvre, P. V. (2006). *Trigger error handling and reporting*. CERN, Switzerland. Available from: *http://edms.cern.ch*
- 37. Carena, F., et al. (2005). *Vanguard and rearguard events in ALICE*. CERN, Switzerland, ALICE-INT-2005-0 version 1.7
- 38. Stephenson, J. (2005) *Design Guidelines for Optimal Results in FPGAs*. DOI: CF-031405-1.0 Available from: *http://www.altera.com/*
- 39. Musa, L. *TPC Weekly Meeting: ALICE TPC Data Format* (2008), CERN, Switzerland. Available from:

http://indico.cern.ch/conferenceDisplay.py?confId=27653

- 40. Munkejord, M. (2007). *Development of the ALICE Busy Box*, MSc Thesis, Department of Physics and Technology, University of Bergen, Norway
- 41. Bergeron, J. (2003), Writing testbenches: functional verification of HDL models, 2nd edition, Springer Science+Business Media, Inc. ISBN: 1-4020-7401-8
- 42. Skaali, T. B. *PHOS meeting: The PHOS GTL Bus* (2008), CERN, Switzerland. Available from: *http://indico.cern.ch/conferenceDisplay.py?confId=30642*
- 43. Røed, K., Bergen University College, Norway, Private communication
- 44. Musa, L., CERN, Switzerland, Private communication
- 45. Miller, G. and Carmichael, C. (2007) Single-Event Upset Mitigation for Xilinx FPGA Block Memories, XAPP962, v1.0. Available from: http://www.xilinx.com
- 46. Bridgford, B., Carmichael, C., and Tseng, C. W. (2007) Correcting Single-Event Upsets in Virtex-II Platform FPGA Configuration Memory, XAPP779 (v1.1) Available from: http://www.xilinx.com
- 47. The Wiki-page of the Experimental Nuclear Physics Group Department of Physics and Technology, University of Bergen, Norway: *http://www.ift.uib.no/~kjeks/wiki*
- 48. ALICE Central Trigger Processor Webpage, ALICE Trigger Group, Birmingham, England: http://epweb2.ph.bham.ac.uk/user/pedja/alice/
- Note: Most of the referenced publications in this thesis can be downloaded from: http://web.ift.uib.no/~kjeks/jalme_phd-thesis_references.zip